COMPENDIUM
OF
JAINISM
COMPENDIUM
OF
JAINISM

By

T. K. TUKOL, M. A., LL. B.
Judge of the High Court of Karnataka (Retd.)
Former Vice-Chancellor
Bangalore University, Bangalore

Foreword By

Late Dr. A. N. UPADHYE, M. A., D. Litt.
Professor And Head of the Dept. of Jainology & Prakrit
University of Mysore, Mysore-6

PRASARANGA
KARNATAK UNIVERSITY, DHARWAD
1980
Publisher:

C. S. Kanavi, M. A.
Director,
Prasaranga,
Karnatak University, Dharwad 580003

First Edition: November, 1980
1000 Copies

© Karnatak University, Dharwad

Price: Rs. 60
$ 4
£ 1.5

Printer:

G. B. Manvachar
Asst. Director,
Karnatak University Press, Dharwad
Foreword

This Compendium is a systematic treatise on Jainism. Even a glance at the titles of the Chapters gives an idea of the vast range of topics discussed by the learned author in this work.

Jainism is an ancient religion. When the Jaina studies were in their infancy, there were many misconceptions about its antiquity etc., but now they are all being cleared with the advance of studies carried on by Indian and Eastern scholars. The holy dignitaries like Viśabhā, Pārśva, Mahāvīra, whose biographies are succinctly sketched here, have enriched the cultural wealth of this land. The post-Mahāvīra career of Jainism, especially its spread to the South and subsequent schisms are a fascinating chapter in the religious history of India. The Jaina concepts of divinity and worship, of the Universe and its constituents, of the sentient world and its elaborate details etc., deserve the special attention of a student of comparative religion.

That Karma is a subtle variety of matter affecting one's spiritual destiny by its association with the Ātma operates automatically and functions as an irresistible moral law which leaves no scope for any divine intervention in the affairs of all living beings. Every one must reap the fruits of his own thoughts, words and deeds. The fundamental principles like the Tattvas or Padārthas and the stages of spiritual progress (Guṇaśāhānas) fully work out the relation between the Ātman and the Karman in details. The liberation of the Ātman from the clutches of Karman depends upon the cultivation of Right Faith, Right Knowledge and Right Conduct working in Unison.

Jainism is rightly called Ethical Realism; and it has laid great stress on good conduct. One for the layman and the other for the ascetic. The former is less rigorous than the latter. The ascetic observes the Mahāyāyasās ideally; he lives a spiritual life, devoted to meditation and absolute possessionlessness (aparigraha). One
who has no attachment of any kind faces death voluntarily; he is not afraid of death, because he knows that his soul is immortal. With such high ethical ideals, Jainism has enriched the Indian heritage and culture in various ways. The doctrines of Ahimsā, Anekānta and Aparigraha have more relevance today than before, as humanity is now facing many ethical and spiritual problems created by scientific and technological advancements.

There are a number of manuals already dealing with Jainism but the present Compendium has its specialities. The author's discussion of the various topics is authentic, supported by relevant verses and sutras from the scriptures with comments thereon. As such, it should be welcome to all critical readers who want to understand Jainism in a non-technical set-up. Jainism is not only a religion and a well-knit philosophy, but also a way of life which has given spiritual solace to a number of laymen and saints that have relinquished the ties of the world.

Justice T. K. Tukol has a remarkable blend in himself of the polished expression of a Professor of English, cogent argumentation of a gifted advocate, the balanced presentation of an experienced judge and the intellectual penetration of an earnest inquirer into truth and reality. He has ever been a close and critical student of Jainism, apart from being a pious Śrāvaka. All these qualities of Justice Tukol are transparent in this Compendium which is an outcome of his deep study and understanding of Jaina, Nayas, God, Creation and Anekāntavāda in a lucid manner. He has cleared many wrong notions of earlier scholars and presented those tenets in their proper perspective.

A careful study of Justice Tukol's exposition will give a correct understanding of Jainism which holds an important position among Indian philosophical systems and has influenced the Indian pattern of thinking and way of life in many areas.

University of Mysore
Manasa Gangotri, Mysore-6
May 22, 1975.

A. N. Upadhye
Preface

In November 1973, I was pleasantly surprised by a kind letter from Dr. Ramesh S. Mehta, Vice Chancellor, Sardar Patel University, Vallabha Vidyanagar (Gujarat University) inquiring if I could undertake to write a book on Jaina Darśana as I had been recommended for the purpose by the Advisory Committee of the Trust for publication of books on the major religions of the world. I agree to undertake the work.

The main object of the Trust, as I understand, is to “Promote tolerance among the people following different creeds” by publication of books on the “basic tenets of the major religions of the world.” I have therefore tried to expound the various tenets of Jainism with reference to the basic scriptures acceptable to the Digambaras as well as the Śvetāmbaras, besides clarifying some of the misconceptions about the antiquity of the religion and some of its fundamental doctrines. I have given in each chapter a free rendering of the relevant original verse on the subject under discussion, without doing any harm to its meaning and spirit. I have tried to discuss each topic with consistency, precision and clarity. It has been my endeavour to present the essence of the tenets of this great and very ancient religion as dispassionately as possible without exaggeration so as to ensure a correct understanding of its philosophy. My object throughout has been to achieve authenticity in the presentation of doctrines. It is for the readers to assess the extent of my success in this task.

My primary thanks are due to the Trustees of the Publication Committee and to the former Vice-Chancellor of the University Dr. Ramesh S. Mehta who gave me the opportunity of writing this book. I must record my profound sense of gratitude to late Dr. A. N. Upadhye, M.A., D.Litt., Head of the Department of
Jainology and Prakrit in the University of Mysore (Karnataka). He was an eminent research scholar of international repute. He has contributed not less than a century of original and learned research papers to various Oriental Journals. He has also edited and published more than 25 ancient scriptures with comparative studies of different manuscripts and with erudite introductions. He was the chief Indian delegate representing Jainism to the World Conference of Religions and Peace held in 1974 at Leuven in Belgium. Even amidst his busy schedule of work, he was kind enough to spare his valuable time to go through the manuscript and make very useful suggestions including an appropriate title to the book: "Compendium of Jainism." He has also graced this book with an invaluable and generous foreword.

I sent the original manuscript of the book to the Sardar Patel University in May 1975 hoping that the book would be published during the 2500th year of Nirvāṇa of Bhagavān Mahāvīra; but the book saw the light of the day only in 1978 as the Rules of Trust required the book to be published in Gujarathi only, after being translated into that language.

I was keen that the book in its English text was published by some other University. Hence, I requested Dr. R. C. Hiremath, the then Vice-Chancellor of the Karnatak University, Dharwad, to consider if his University could undertake publication of the book in English. He readily accepted my request. I am grateful to him for his kindness and to his successor in that office Shri S. S. Wodeyar for evincing continued interest in its publication. I offer my sincere thanks to Sri Chennavvara Kanavi, Director of Prasaranga of the University, not only for his prompt and efficient execution of the work but also for relieving me from the labour of correcting proofs to avoid delay in printing and publication. I have no words to thank Prof. G. Mahadevappa who voluntarily undertook to correct the proof, as a labour of love which is indeed a favour to me.
I must also mention the name of my eldest son Sri Bahubali T. Tukol, B. E. (Hons), as he spared no pains in looking after the typing of the manuscript of the book and carrying out typing corrections.

I shall feel amply rewarded if the book enlightens its readers on the basic tenets of Jainism whose doctrines of Ahimsa, Aparigraha and Anekantavada have an abiding interest in solving the modern problems and in spreading the spirit of universal brotherhood and tolerance of other creeds with equal respect and breadth of vision.

Bangalore-11
September 22, 1980

T. K. Tukol
CONTENTS

Foreword iii
Preface v

I Jainism And Its Antiquity 1
II The Tirthankaras And Lord Mahavira 27
III After Mahavira And The Schism 48
IV Concept of God And of Worship 61
V The Universe 75
VI Jiva or The Theory of Soul 87
VII The Doctrine of Karma 106
VIII The Doctrine of Lesya 128
IX The Seven Principles (Tattvas) 139
(Karma Theory Continued)
X The Nine Pudarthis or Fundamental Truths 156
XI Guna-Sthanas or Fourteen Stages in The 163
Spiritual Evolution of Soul
XII Ratnatraya or The Three Jewels 179
XIII Jaina Ethics And Way of Life or Being 199
XIV Eleven Pratimas or Stages of Progress 233
In A House-Holder's Life
XV Dasa-Dharma or The Ten Supreme Virtues 241
XVI Ethics For Ascetics 256
XVII Sallekhana 275
XVIII Pathway To Liberation 283
XIX Anekantavada-Syadvada 302
XX Relevance of Jainism To Modern Thought 323
Chapter 1

JAINISM AND ITS ANTIQUITY

The history of human thought discloses that man has been in constant search of truth and happiness. He wants to save himself from misery and pain. As he is a social being, his solution for his problems of happiness and pain has to be with reference to his society or the world at large. He has a soul and a body. In any experience of happiness or misery, pleasure or pain, the question involved is one either with reference to the soul or the body, or both. Besides, there is the Universe. The relationship between man and the Universe has been the subject-matter both of science and religion, the common objective of which has been the search for truth.

Science has concerned itself with the discovery of order in the phenomena of nature. It seeks to formulate laws inherent in natural events and to account for them in an analytical manner without recourse to the mysterious or the mythological. Though the achievements of science in the realm of the external have been excitingly remarkable, the problems of the reality and the meaning of life still remain outside its perview.

Early religion has tried to answer the essential questions relating to the relation that exists between Man and the Universe, man and his duties, his goal of life and the path that leads to its attainment. Many saints and sages have answered these questions from time to time by precept and
example. What they said and did have been noted down and have formed the creeds of their religions. The one point on which they have differed is about the existence of God, his attributes and work.

Jainism does not recognise that the Universe is the Creation of God. The Universe is made up of Jivas (souls) and ajivas (non-souls) which are eternal, uncreated, co-existing and independent by nature. The non-souls are of five kinds, viz. pudgala (matter), dharma (motion) and adharma (stationariness), kāla (time) and akāśa (space). Jīva is characterised by jñāna and darśana, is formless, the kartā (agent) co-extent with the expanse of its body, enjoyer of the fruits of the Karmas and possesses upward motion. It exists in samsāra and is Siddha while in perfect state. The soul is immortal while matter is indestructible. The Vedāntin recognises only the Brahman as the cause of creation. Jainism recognises that plants and particles of earth, cold water, fire and wind are each possessed of life. This scientific classification does not derive its authority from the Vedas or the other scriptures sacred to the Hindus. While the Upanishads assert the oneness of the self and the Transcendent Being, the Buddha did not concern himself much with the metaphysical questions and left them as inexplicable (avyakta). He refused to answer either affirmatively or negatively all questions about the soul and body, the nature of the world, and existence or non-existence of the soul after death. He refused to speculate on these subjects.

The theological concepts of Jainism are clear and rational. Jainism regards a liberated soul which has attained its inherent qualities of perfect bliss, knowledge etc. as God. Godhood is the ideal of perfection. God does not control the universe or the individual. He can neither grant nor deny grace or happiness to anybody. But Hinduism recognises a personal God as the creator, the preserver and destroyer of the world.

Consistently with the principle of each individual’s capacity to attain perfection or Godhood, the ethical principles of
Jainism prescribe a code of conduct which requires an individual to be an ideal person with ahimsā as the foundation of his life. It preaches universal love aiming at the good of every being in the world. Selfishness, greed, anger and pride are passions which are the main causes of our misery and pain. They are to be eschewed at all costs and are to be overcome by selflessness, charity, compassion, forgiveness etc. which elevate the soul and contribute to the happiness of others in society. It has shown the way for attaining ethical and spiritual excellence gradually in eleven stages (pratimā) in the career of a house-holder, at the end of which one has cut all ties from family life. It recognises fourteen stages of spiritual evolution (guṇasthāna) for the soul, the house-holder’s eleven stages being included in the fifth stage here. The five small vows or the aṇuvrataś: not hurting any life, truthfulness, non-stealing, celibacy and the need to impose limitations on one’s own possessions, are rules to be observed in daily life. While they conduce to the well-being of the individual, they have immense implications of social good. Similarly, the other rules of daily study of scriptures, charity and worship help the layman to keep himself pure and unsullied in thought and action. The ethics for the monks and nuns are still more rigorous and comprehend all aspects of human life.

The Jaina rituals aim at helping the individual in the development of his devotion towards his religious ideal and attainment of purity in thought, speech and action. They are intended to help man to lead a righteous life and strengthen his desire to realise the goal of perfection shown to him by the Omniscient Tirthankaras.

Jainism is a way of life shown by the Jinas or the Tirthankaras. It is a religion which helps its follower to destroy the Karmas and attain the highest happiness. The three Jewels viz. Right faith, Right knowledge and Right conduct together constitute the path of liberation or emancipation. The three in unison can alone help the soul to reach
the peak of perfection. That is the song of life heard from the Holy Ones who are twenty-four in number and who flourished and attained Godhood in the present Cycle of Time. The first Tirthankara, according to the Jaina tradition, is Rśabha Deva while the last one is Mahāvīra. "According to Jaina tradition of 24 Tirthankaras, the first Rśabha revealed the ahimsā-dharma. The last of these was Mahāvīra who was an elder contemporary of the Buddha. It is now accepted that Jainism is older than Buddhism and that Mahāvīra who lived from 599 B.C. to 527 B.C. was not the founder of Jainism and that his predecessor Pārśva who lived 260 years earlier was also a historical person. The Ahimsa doctrine preached by Rśabha is possibly prior in time to the advent of Aryans in India and the prevalent culture of the period."  

Inspite of the modern advances in researches made in the fields of ancient Indian history and philosophy, there are still some scholars who assert that Jainism is an offshoot of Vedic Brahmanism and that the Jainas, like the Buddhists, are dissenters of Hinduism. Even an eminent historian like Arnold Toynbee asserts that Mahāvīra is the "founder of Jainism" and mentions Jainas as "amongst the fossilized relics of similar societies now extinct." He proceeds to observe: "Similarly, the Jainas of India and the Hinayanan Buddhists of Ceylon, Burma and Siam can be seen to be fossils of Indian society in the State in which this society was when it was developing under the Mauryan Empire." These views are obviously based on insufficient, if not erroneous material. The pages that follow will disclose that Jainism is neither an outgrowth of another religion nor an antiquated out-of-date religion as is sought to be conveyed by the words "fossilized relics." It is true that today the Jainas are a numerical minority but their contribution to the enrichment of Indian philosophy, literature, art, architecture and culture has been remarkably enduring. The interest of Jainism to the student of religion consists in the fact that it goes back to a very early period. We know that the sacred books of the Jainas are old, avowedly older than the Sanskrit literature which we are
accustomed to call classical. Toynbee seems to have perhaps overlooked numerous facts brought to light by the modern research scholars mentioned in the following pages.

Mrs. Sinclair Stevenson holds the view that "both Buddhist and Jaina orders arose about the same time, the sixth century B.C., a period when the constant wars between various little kingdoms must have made the lot of the common people hideous with suffering and oppression; and a man might well have longed to escape from all fear of rebirth into such a sorrowful world, and hoped, by renouncing everything that could be taken from him, and by voluntarily stripping himself of all possessions and all emotions, to evade the avaricious fingers of king or fortune."

It is unnecessary to multiply similar views which in substance raise three questions relating to the antiquity of Jainism. They are 1) Is it an offshoot of Buddhism? 2) or of Hinduism? 3) Is it older than the Vedic Religion?

Jainism and Buddhism

The view that both these religions arose at about the same time as expressed by Mrs. Stevenson does not hold the field since even Geo P. Taylor who has written an introduction to her book has dissented from her. He says: "Within the last thirty years a small band of scholars, pre-eminent amongst them are the late Hofrath Professor Buhler, Professor Jacobi, and Dr. Hoernle, have effected a great advance in our knowledge of Jainism. For long it had been thought that Jainism was but a sub-sect of Buddhism, but, largely as a consequence of the researches of Orientalists just mentioned, that opinion has been finally relinquished, and Jainism is now admitted to be one of the most ancient monastic organizations of India. So, far from being merely a modern variation of Buddhism, Jainism is older of the two heresies, and it is most certain that Mahāvīra, though a contemporary of Buddha, predeceased him by some fifty years."
Such opinions apart, the Buddhist history and literature establish that after he had renounced the world, the Buddha was for sometime an ascetic following the Jaina cult of Pārśva who was the twenty-third Tīrthankara of the Jaina religion. In Buddhist literature Mahāvīra has been described as Nigantha Nātaputta. In the Majjhima Nikāya, there is a reference to the ascetics who were the followers of Mahāvīra telling that their Master was Omiscient and that he had disclosed to them details about their previous births. There is also a narration by the Buddha himself to his disciples about his experiences when he went naked, took food in his own palms and followed the various restrictions regarding the taking of food. It is obvious that the course of conduct first followed by him is quite identical with ordinances of the Jaina ascetic life. That book also contains a reference to Upāli who was first a devotee of the Buddha, had a difference of opinion with him about comparative gravity of the bodily and mental Karmas and was ultimately converted to Jainism.

The Dhammapada is the Bible of the Buddhistic religion. It is an anthology of verses collected from the different books of the Tripitaka which stand for the sacred scriptures in Pāli containing the original teachings of the Buddha. Both Jainism and Buddhism belong to the stream of Śramanic culture, and naturally there is an attempt to redefine the term Brāhmaṇa, not based on heredity but on individual good qualities (See Dhammapada 393). Vīśabha, Mahāvīra and the Buddha belonged to the same Śramanic culture and were Brāhmaṇas by virtues. That is what is stated in verse 422 of Dhammapada:—

"Usabham pavaram Vīraṁ
Mahesim vijitavīhaṁ
anejam nahatakam Buddham
tamaham brūmi brahmanam."

"The most excellent (pravara) foremost Vīśabha, the victorious and the great saint (vijita and maharṣi) Vīra (i.e.
Mahāvīra) and Buddha, the desireless and pure (aneja and nahataka), him (taking every one individually) do I call a Brāhmaṇa."

Besides, there are differences between the two religions in their metaphysical and philosophical concepts. The animistic ideas of the Jainas are more ancient. While Buddhism regards all things as transitory, Jainism regards Jīva and Ajīva as eternal substances. According to Buddhism, there is no continuity of individuality from life to life. The universe is transient and soulless. The soul is not immortal. During transmigration from one life to another, only a new life arises as part of the chain of events.

Shri Jyotiprasad Jain has mentioned a number of references which show that Jainism is older than Buddhism. Prof. Hermann Jacobi has referred to the common misconception of Jainism being an offshoot of Buddhism and dispelled all doubts: "... The Jains being non-Brahmanical, have worked upon popular notions of a more primitive and cruder character, e.g. animistic ideas. But the metaphysical principles of Buddhism are of an entirely different character... there is no absolute and permanent Being, or in other words, that all things are transitory. Notwithstanding the radical difference in their philosophical notions, Jainism and Buddhism being outside the pale of Brahmanism, present resemblance in outward appearance, so that even Indian writers occasionally have confounded them. It is, therefore, not to be wondered that some European scholars who became acquainted with Jainism through inadequate samples of Jaina literature easily persuaded themselves that it was an off-shoot of Buddhism. But it has since been proved that their theory is wrong... The canonical books of Buddhists mention as a rival sects, under their old name Niganṭha (Sanskrit: Nirgrantha, common Prakrit, Niganath) and their leader in Buddha's time, Nātaputta (Nāta or Vātaputta being an epithet of last prophet of Jainas), Vardhamāna Mahāvīra, and they name the latter's place of
Compendium of Jainism

dearth Pāvā, in agreement with the Jaina tradition... Mahāvīra was a contemporary of Buddha and probably somewhat older than the latter who outlived his rival's decease at Pāvā..... Mahāvīra, however, unlike Buddha, was most probably not the founder of the sect which reveres him as their prophet, nor the author of their religion. According to unanimous Buddhist tradition, Buddha had under the Bodhi tree, discovered by intuition the fundamental truths of his religion as it appears throughout his personal works; his first sermons are things even to be remembered by his followers as are the doctrines which he then preached. No such tradition is preserved in the canonical books of the Jainas about Mahāvīra. Thus Mahāvīra appears in the tradition of his own sect as one who from the beginning, followed a religion established long ago; had he been the founder of Jainism, tradition ever eager to extol a prophet, would not have totally repressed his claims to reverence as such. But he is without doubt the last prophet of Jainas, the last Tirthankara. His predecessor Pārśva..... whose death took place 250 years before that of Mahāvīra... "

Jainism and Hinduism

Some of the western scholars have propounded that Jainism is a result of revolt against Hinduism. Mrs. Stevenson asserted: "It must always be remembered that Jainism, though a rebellious daughter, is nonetheless a daughter of Brahmanism, many of whose leading beliefs are still held by Jains..." Instead of finding support for her view from the essential doctrines of the two religions, she contents herself by saying that "much of their worship resembles Hindu worship, and their domestic chaplains, though not their temple officials, are still Brahmins." There are some Indian scholars who subscribe to this view and assert that Jainas are Hindu dissenters and their religion is an offshoot of Vedic-Hinduism. Shri B. N. Luniya holds the view that sixth century B. C. was the time of great ferment of minds in the whole world, that the Hindus in India became disappointed at that time with the
old philosophic dogmas, that they stood for simplicity of worship and that Jainism constituted a reformatory movement in Brahmanism. The popular impression is that Jainism is a religion of those who revolted against animal sacrifices of the Hindus.

A solution to this question is to be found on the strength of the fundamental distinctions between the philosophical and metaphysical concepts of the two religions. The Vedas which are supposed to be of divine origin, contain verses primarily in adoration of the three gods: Sūrya, Indra and Agni. These are the most prominent, deities of the Vedic age. Varuna was regarded as guarding the cosmic order, omnipresent, and as punishing people for their sins. Sacrifice was the most vital method of worship. Its primary object was the gratification of gods to obtain their grace. Later on during the period of the Brāhmaṇas came Brahmā, Viṣṇu and Maheśa. It was during the period of the Upanishads that the doctrines of transmigration and Karman became popular. They recognised Brahman as the Ātman to be realized in order to be free from transmigration. Man becomes free from the joys and sorrows when he reaches the stage of Brahman. "The identity of the souls of the individuals and the universe is reiterated throughout the Upanishadic literature, with varying emphasis, and with differing interpretations of the nature of identity and the character of the universal soul. "Tattvamasi" 'you (the individual) are that universal essence' is the leading theme of the Upanishads.

These fundamental principles of the Hindu religion have very little in common with Jainism. Mrs. N. R. Guseva has noted the points of difference between the two religions: "There are at least eight features which distinguish Jainism from Vedic religion and Brahmanism. Those features are so much substantial that they do not afford any possibility of regarding Jainism as a sect of Brahmanism or its some other product. These features can be reduced to the following: (1) Jainism rejects holiness of Veda. (2) Stands against the dogma that
Compendium of Jainism

gods are the main objects of worship. (3) Rejects bloody sacrifices and number of other elements of Brähmanic ritual. (4) Does not recognise Varṇa—Caste system—of the Brähmanic society. (5) Prescribes defence of other's life. (6) Prescribes asceticism. (7) Prescribes nudity at the time of ritual. (8) Allows women monkhood, learning of holy books etc.”

I may also add that Jainism does not recognise the theory of creation of the Universe by God or that the latter is its protector. There are however three elements common to the two religions and Buddhism. They are: faith in the rebirth of the soul, the doctrine of the karman holding that each has to enjoy or suffer the fruits of one's own actions and the belief in the possibility of attaining final liberation or salvation. “... they (the three elements) are apparently borrowed by the later Brähmanism from non-Vedic faiths and it means that they are hardly brought into Jainism by the Āryans.”

From what has been said above, it should be clear that Jainism which differs fundamentally from Hinduism cannot be regarded as its offshoot. The question then would be, whether Jainism is an older religion than Hinduism.

Vedic and other References

There are references to the Jaina Tirthankaras, the Śravaṇas, Arhats and their principles in the Rgveda, Yajurveda and the Purānas. Shri Subbaya Sastri has quoted from these sources in his introduction to the Śaṭkhaṇḍāgama a large number of references, some or which are quoted below from pages 10 to 12 of that volume. According to the Jaina tradition, Viṣabhadeva had among others two sons by name Bharata and Bāhubali and that India has been named as Bharata after the eldest son. The account of Jaina tradition is given in the Mahāpurāṇa of Ācārya Jinasena. This finds support from the account in the Viṣṇupurāṇa also:
This means "Bharata was born of Rṣabha. He was the eldest amongst the hundred brothers; it is from this time that this land is known as Bharata in the world." In the fifth chapter of the fifth part of Bhāgavata Purāṇa it is stated:

"Bhagavān viṣabhadevaḥ upaśamasilāmān uparatarkaranamān mabā-muninām bhaktijnanavairāgyalakṣaṇām paramabhamsadharmanam upaśikṣamānaḥ.
svatanajayestyham bharataṁ dharani-pālanāya abhiśicya svayam urvaritaśartra-mātra-parigrahah pravaravṛāja."

This means that "Bhagavān Rṣabha seated his son Bharata, who was well-versed in religion and was devoutly inclined towards the ascetics through his signs of devotion and renunciation, on the throne for ruling over the earth and renounced the world."

This theory that India came to be known as Bharata after the eldest son of Bhagavān Rṣabha Deva who ruled over the country is contradicted by some scholars who assert that it is Bharata the son of Duṣyanta and Śakuntalā that is entitled to the honour. It cannot be disputed that Duṣyanta was a king of later date and brought into prominence by the drama named Śākuntalā by Kālidāsa.
In the Rgveda, we have reference to another Tirthankara viz. Ariṣṭanemi. It reads: “Sa asmakaṃ ariṣṭanemi svāhā 
abhan vibhārṣī sāyaḥān dhanyār haniṣṭam yajataṃ viṣvarūpam 
ārhanidām dayase.” (Āṣṭak 2, Varga 7).

There is another reference in the same Veda at Āṣṭak 1, 
Adhyāya 6 and Varga 16: ॐ स्वस्तिनः ......विष्णवः: 
स्वस्तिनार्थवर्ध्यो अं गटेन्म: चवस्तिनो बृहस्पतिर्देवान्। 
Viṣavedha svastinastāksya Ariṣṭanemihi svastino bhraṃpatirādātāu....

In the Yajurveda, there are references to the three 
Tirthankaras viz. Rṣabha, Supārśva and Neminātha in cantoes 
25 and 92 respectively:

“Om namo arhato Rṣabho, om Rṣabhah pavitraṃ 
puruhātamaddhvarām yatśu nagnam paramā māha...
svāha Om trātāramindram Rshabhah vadanī 
amṛtāramindram have sugatām supārśvamindramahuriti 
samsutam varam. Vajasyanu prasava avabhuvmachā 
viśvabhuvaṇāni sarvarah sa nemiraja pariyati vidvanā 
prajānpushtim vardhamanah.”

ॐ नमो अर्हतो र्षेष्ट्रो, ओ र्षेष्ट्रः: पवित्रं पुरुषतमःधवरं 
वतीषुनं 
परस्माह संस्तृतं वरं, शाछु जयंतं पुरुषिन्द्रभूतिं स्वाहाः।
ॐ वातरामिनद्र अर्हत्यं तद्वितं अमूतारामिनद्रं हुवें सुगं सुस 
रिश्विनिमिद्रभूतिं स्वाहा, ओ नमं सुबीरं 
विग्वाससंं बहुगच्छ 
सनातनं अपूर्वीमो बीरं पुरुषं महत्तमादिप्रच्छ

तमसं परस्तात् स्वाहा॥

यजुवाद अध्याय २५ श्रुति १९
Here the references are obviously to the first, seventh and twenty-second Tirthankaras. Dr. Radhakrishnan accepts the validity of these references and observes: "Jaina tradition ascribes the origin of the system to Rṣabhadeva, who lived many centuries back. There is evidence to show that so far back as the first century B.C. there were people who were worshipping Rṣabhadeva, the first Tirthankara. There is no doubt that Jainism prevailed even before Vardhamāna or Pārśvanātha. The Yajurveda mentions the names of three Tirthankaras—Rṣabha, Ajita and Arītasanemi. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa endorses the view that Rṣabhadeva was the founder of Jainism."

There is a reference to the first Tirthankara in the Manusmṛti also:

अष्टमो मरुदेव्यां तु नाभज्जातः अुएकः ।
दर्शयन्त् कर्मेऽवराणं सुरासुरसक्षणः ।
नीतित्रयस्य कर्ता यो, युगाद्रो प्रथमो जिनः ॥

मनुस्मृति

aṣṭamo marudevyām tu nābhjerjitaḥ urukramaḥ ।
darṣayān karmavīrāṇāṁ surāsura-namaskṛtaḥ ।
nītirayasya kartā yo yugadāu prathamo jinaḥ ॥

In the beginning of the age (yuga) was born the first Jaina to Marudevi from the eighth Nābhi Manu, who was the hero of action, saluted by the gods and demons and propagated the ethics and rules of punishment. Similar description is found in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. Not only do the verses conform to the tradition mentioned above but also give the details of advice which Rṣabha gave to his sons and which is consistent with the principles of Jainism.

The aforesaid references to the Arhats and the three Tirthankaras can only mean that these personalities must be pre-Vedic and that the religion that they preached was earlier to the Vedic religion. "According to the belief of the Jainas
themselves, Jaina religion is eternal and it has been revealed again and again, in every one of the endless succeeding periods of the world by innumerable Tirthankaras... The interest of Jainism to the student of religion consists in the fact that it goes back to a very early period, and to the primitive currents of religions and metaphysical speculation, which gave rise to the oldest Indian philosophies-Sāńkhya and Yoga-and to Buddhism. It shares in theoretical pessimism of these systems, as also in their practical ideal-liberation.”

Dates of the Vedas

There is considerable difference of opinion as regards the dates of composition of the Vedas. “The dates of the composition and collection of the hymns of the Ṛgveda are unknown... There is evidence to indicate with some certainty that the hymns were current fifteen centuries before Christ, somewhat in the arrangement in which we have them at the present time”.

“The epoch of creation of the Vedas consists of a long duration viz. the period between the third and the first millennium B. C.” It appears that B. G. Tilak carried it fifteen centuries earlier while the later historians consider that the Vedas were formed during the second and the first half of the first millennium B. C. The process of accumulation of the Vedic hymns was gradual and partly proceeded in the course of many centuries until the arrival of Āryans in India. The widely accepted view of the age of the Ṛgveda is not later than 2500 B. C.

Mohenjodaro and Harappa Finds

Many scholars have carried on researches about the nature and antiquity of the Indus Civilization, known to archaeologists as Harappa culture. Harappa is the modern name of the site of one of the two great cities on the left bank of the river Rāvi in the Punjab. Mohenjodaro is the name of the site of the second city which is on the right bank of the river Sindhu or Indus. The site is about 250 miles from the mouth of that river. Sir John Marshall’s monumental works on Mohenjodaro
refer to six seals, marked plate xii and plate cxviii figure. These were studied by Mr Chanda and he has pointed out in his article in the Modern Review for August 1932 that the standing deities on these seals "in the posture of Yoga known as Kāyotsarga, a standing posture peculiar to the Jaina Yogis as illustrated, for instance, in the famous statue of Rṣabhadeva of about second century A. D. are on view at the Mathura Museum. The name Rṣabha itself means the bull, which is also the emblem of the Jina. It is curious that the seals numbered (f), (g) and (h) of Plate ii (ibl) also show a standing deity with a bull in the foreground. Can it be the forerunner of Rṣabha? If so, Jainism also along with Śaivism, must take its place as one of the oldest religions of Chalcolithic origins, thus helping the over hiatus between the Indus and subsequent Indian Civilizations as phases in a common cultural evolution". 10 Another seal found at Mohenjodaro contains a standing figure of a deity in nude form standing between the branches of a tree.

These figures are undoubtedly in conformity with the tradition and culture of Jainism. Acharya Tulsi considers that the pose of yogāsana, in which several figures are drawn on the seals of Mohenjodaro, was worked out by the Jainas, was widely known in pre-Āryan India and was borrowed much later by the Hindu ascetics. 20 Prof. Pran Nath Vidyālankara says that "the inscription on the Indus seal No. 449 reads according to my decipherment, Jīneswara or Jīnesa (Jin-i-i-sarāh") 21

Among the seals discovered by the archaeologists, some of them have signs of Swastik on them. Referring to them, Mrs. Guseva observes: These are "common in the symbols of Jainism. Swastik is the symbolic sign of the 7th priest (Tirthankara), Supārśva. The Jainas consider that there were 23 Tirthankaras before Mahāvīra and the middle part forms the sign of the 18th Tirthankara Ara. This sign is always drawn in manuscripts and in the ornaments of the Jaina temples etc." 22

The excavations have revealed the existence of well-planned beautiful cities constructed long prior to the invasion of the
Aryans. There is unanimity amongst the research scholars that the civilization and tradition of the people who built them must be about 4000 B.C. and that they were superior to the culture of the Aryans. Prof. Chakravarti draws pointed attention to the absence of weapons of warfare and concludes that the civilization of the Indus Valley was obviously based upon the principle of ahimsa which is the central creed of the Jaina culture. He agrees with the other scholars in their inference that "the figure of the Yogi and the figure of the bull found in the excavation of Mohenjodaro and Harappa may be closely connected with Lord Rishabha, whose cult of ahimsa was the faith of the people living in the Indus valley."  

After the Aryans had won victories over the sections of people who opposed them, they settled in the Panjab and the Western part of the Gangetic plain. They called the residents Dasyus and pushed them to the extreme east and regions beyond the Vindhyas. They introduced the worship of various gods by sacrifice of animals and later brought into their social structure changes in the form of Varnas which played an important role in the development of the country, much to the detriment of cohesion and harmony amongst the people. The followers of the ahimsa cult condemned both the animal sacrifices and the varnas.

Apart from these doctrinal developments, Mrs. Guseva refers to the philosophic conception of atma-vidyā as being a contribution of the Kshatriyās and observes: "The tradition, widely represented in the ancient Indian literature asserts that the conception of atma vidyā had spread precisely in the eastern Gangetic regions (i.e. where the faith of Jainism was formed) and that even Brahmins used to come to listen to the sermons of Kshatriya ruler of these regions... Ancient Indian literature contains indications of the antiquity of the sources of Jainism and it also indicates that the Kshatriyas and ascetics from Vrātyās i.e. non-Aryans played noticeable role in establishing non-Vedic teachings..." It is worthwhile to remember the
even though the Vedas made no mention of Ātmavidyā, the Upanishads which came later propounded the theory of Ātmavidyā or Brahma Vidyā. 

Inscriptions

It is an established fact of history that many rulers in ancient Bihar and the territories round-about, were either patrons or followers of Jainism. Chetaka, the ruler of Lichhavi was a Jain and he gave his sister to Siddhartha. Mahavira was born of this wedlock. Some of the members of the Nanda dynasty were Jainas. So was Chandragupta Maurya who later followed Bhadrabahu to the South. The Kalinga territory was occupied by Jainas since the time of Parśva. It is therefore natural that there should be some reminiscences of Jainism in this part. The excavations near Mathura furnish important evidence of Jaina sculpture. The Arahanātha, the 18th Tīrthankara, bears an inscription of 78 samvats. Shri S. C. Divakar refers to an inscription deciphered by Rai Bahadur Gaurishanker Harishanker Jha. It was found near the Badli village round about Ajmer. This refers to 84 Vīra Nirvāṇa era i. e. 443 B. C. and to the prevalence of Jainism in Rājasthān. 

An inscription found by Fuhrer of about 100 years B. C. refers to grant of land for the worship of Rṣabhadeva. Dr. Hiralal refers to an inscription on Stupā found near Mathura to the effect that Ayāgāpaṭa was got prepared by the wife of a dancer by name Faguyasa for the worship of Arhatdanta. Vincent Smith assigns 150 years B. C. to this inscription from the form of the letters.

Shri Divakar refers to an inscription called “the Hathi-gumpha inscription of Udayagiri Hill written in Apabhramśa” as throwing valuable light on the antiquity of Jainism. It begins with an invocation in traditional Jaina style referring to Arhats and Siddhās and shows that Kharavela, the emperor of Kalinga, was a Jaina and excavated a number of caves at Khandagiri hill. In this inscription of Kharavela, there is a
reference to an idol of Ṛṣabhadeva thus establishing that even before or at about the time of Mahāvīra, Ṛṣabhadeva was being worshipped. These historical details lend support to Ṛṣabha being a Tīrthankara of Jainas.

Foreign Scholars

Many foreign and Indian scholars confirm what has been said above about the antiquity of Jainism. I have quoted already from the articles written by Dr. Hermann Jacobi about the antiquity of Jainism. He says: “There are no reasonable grounds to reject the recorded tradition of a numerous class of men as a tissue of lies. All the events and incidents that relate to their antiquity are recorded so frequently and in such a matter of fact way that they cannot be properly rejected, unless under force of much stronger evidence than the one adduced by scholars who are sceptic about the antiquity of Jainism.” Both Dr. Fuhrer and Prof. L. D. Barnett accept that Lord Neminātha the 22nd Tīrthankara was a historical person. A. A. Macdonnel refers to the antiquity of the Hindu Purāṇas and states that the antiquity of Jainism goes back to a period prior to the origin of Brahmanism itself.

Major Gen J. G. R. Forlong has come to similar conclusions: “there also existed throughout upper India an ancient and highly organized religion, philosophical, ethical and severely ascetical, viz. Jainism, out of which clearly developed the early ascetical features of Brahmanism and Buddhism. Long before the Aryans reached the Ganges or even the Saraswati, Jainas had been taught by some twentytwo prominent Bodhās, saints or Tīrthankaras, prior to the 23rd Bodha Pārśva of the 8th or 9th Century B. C...”

Indian Scholars

The views expressed by Indian Scholars support these conclusions. I have already quoted Dr. S. Radhakrishnan on the subject. Prof. Chakravarti writes: “An impartial study of
Vedic literature in its various stages of development will reveal the fact that there have been two parallel developments of thought, one in conflict with the other. One emphasises strictly the principles of Ahimsā and the other the duties of sacrifice ... the Ahimsā doctrine preached by Rśabha is possibly prior in time to the advent of Āryans in India and the prevalent culture of the period".33 Writing on the history of Jainism, Professor Hiralal expresses almost identical views: "The Jainas claim antiquity for their religion. Their earliest prophet was Rśabhadeva, who is mentioned even in the Viśnu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas as belonging to a very remote past. In the earliest Brahmanic literature are found traces of the existence of a religious order which ranged itself strongly against the authority of the Vedas and the institution of animal sacrifice. According to the Jaina tradition, at the time of the Mahābhārata war, this order was led by Neminātha, who is said to have belonged to the same Yādava family as Kṛṣṇa and who is recognised as the twenty-second Tīrthankara. The order gathered particular strength during the eighth century B. C. under Pārśvanātha, the twenty-third Tīrthankara who was born at Vāraṇasī.34 Dr. A. N. Upadhye who is an eminent scholar on Jainology and Prakrit studies, supports the conclusions reached above: "To take a practical view, the Jaina Tīrthankaras like Rśabhadeva, Neminātha, Pārśvanātha, Mahāvīra etc. have been some of the greatest mystics of the world.....It would be interesting to note that the details about Rśabhadeva given in the Bhāgavata practically and fundamentally agree with those recorded by the Jaina tradition."35

There are other Indian scholars who have subscribed to the antiquity of Jainism. Dr. Vidya Bhushan opines that "Jainism reflects back to the beginning of the creation itself. I have no doubt in asserting that Jaina philosophy is much anterior to Vedānta and other systems."36 Dr. N. N. Basu has been quoted by Jyoti Prasad as saying: "Probably Rśabhadeva was the first to discover the art of writing. He seems to have invented the Brāhmi script for the propagation of Brahma
Vidyā and that is why he came to the known as the 8th Avatāra. He was born to Marudevi, the queen of the Indian king Nābhīrāja and is mentioned in the Bhāgavata as the 8th of the 22 Avatāras.\textsuperscript{37} Vinoba Bhave, the Sarvodaya Leader has opined "Mahāvīra Svāmi is regarded as the 24th Tirthankara. The birth of the Jaina Faith has taken place thousands of years before him. In the prayer of the Bhagavān (Lord) in the Rgveda it is said in one place "Arhan idam dayase viśvam abhayam", that is 'oh Arhan, you show compassion over this insignificant world'. In this, the two words: Arhan and Daya are dear to the Jainas. I am in agreement that perhaps the Jaina religion is as ancient as the Hindu religion."\textsuperscript{32} Prof. G. Satyanarayan Murti is more specific in his views: "Jainism seems to be an indigenous product of ancient schools of thought. Whatever the European scholars of fame have said to the contrary, it is to be noted that Jainism with all the glory of its Dharma and plenitude of its literature, both secular and religious, has been handed down from a hoary antiquity. Jainism has a history of its own, a history on most of the obscure parts of which fresh light is being thrown almost every year owing to the patient researches of many scholars, both in India and abroad. The sources of the history of Jainism are now many and they have themselves, curiously enough a history of their own..."\textsuperscript{33} My own belief is that Jainism was the religion of the Dravidian people who were pre-Aryan inhabitants of India.\textsuperscript{40}

What the Jurists Say?

I cannot better conclude this topic than by quoting the conclusion reached by Jurists on the subject. Sir C. V. Kumarswami Sastriar, Chief Justice of the Madras High Court expressed the view: "...modern research has shown that Jainas are not Hindu dissenters but that Jainism has an origin and history long anterior to the Smṛtis and commentaries which are recognised authorities on Hindu Law and usage. In fact, Mahāvīra, the last of Jaina Thirthankars, was a
contemporary of Buddha and died about 527 B.C. The Jaina religion refers to a number of previous Tirthankaras and there can be little doubt that Jainism as a distinct religion was flourishing several centuries before Christ. In fact Jainism rejects the authority of the Vedas which form the bedrock of Hinduism and denies the efficacy of the various ceremonies which Hindus consider essential... So far as Jaina Law is concerned it has its own law books of which 'Bhadrabahu Samhita' is an important one. 'Vardhamana-Niti' and 'Arhan-Niti' by the great Jaina teacher Hemacandra deal also with Jaina Law..."41

Justice Ranganekar of the Bombay High Court expressed himself in identical terms on the question of antiquity of Jainism: "Now, it is true that later historical researches have shown that Jainism prevailed in this country long before Brahmanism came into existence or held the field, and it is wrong to think that Jains were originally Hindus and were subsequently converted into Jainism. It is also true that owing to their long association with the Hindus, who formed the majority in the country, the Jaina have adopted many of the customs and even ceremonies strictly observed by the Hindus and pertaining to the Brahmanical religion." At the end of the previous paragraph, he stated: "It is true that the Jaina reject the scriptural character of the Vedas, and repudiate the Brahmanical doctrines relating to obsequial ceremonies, performance of Śrāddhās and the offering of the oblations for the salvation of the soul of the deceased. Amongst them there is no belief that a son, either by birth or by adoption, confers spiritual benefit on the father. They also differ from the Brahmanical Hindus in their conduct towards the dead, omitting all obsequies after corpse is burnt or buried."42

The writers on Hindu Law have not concerned themselves with the question of antiquity of Jainism as with the law that governed the Jains in matters of personal law. Mulla has dealt with Jaina tenets and Jaina law stating: "Jainism
flourished several centuries before Christ. The Jaina religion refers to a number of Tirthankaras, the last of whom was Mahāvīra who was a contemporary of Buddha and died in about 527 B. C. Jainism rejects the authority of the Vedas which form the bedrock of Hinduism and denies the efficacy of the various ceremonies which Hindus consider essential. The ordinary Hindu Law is applied to the Jainas in the absence of proof of special customs and usages, varying that law.

Meyne has very little to add on the subject as he has confined his discussions to the law that applied to the Jainas in different matters. According to him, the Jainas, though generally adhering to the Hindu law, recognise no divine authority in the Vedas and do not practise the Śrāddhas or ceremonies for the dead.

Conclusion

On a careful consideration of the discoveries made by modern research scholars, it can be concluded with reasonable certainty that Jainism is an original religion which goes back to the pre-Aryan period of primitive currents of religious and metaphysical speculation; that the images, seals and other finds amongst the discoveries at Harappā and Mohenjadāro disclose splendid representative specimen like the images of Rṣabha and the bull, the first Tirthankara with his emblem, the svastika which is the emblem of Supārśva, the 7th Tirthankara and a seal containing a script deciphered as Jīneśvara. Jainism does not recognise the authority of the Vedas and its fundamental principles and of a different nature from those in each of the systems of the Vedic school. The Rgveda and Yajurveda refer to Rṣabha, Supārśva and Neminātha, the first, the seventh are twenty-second Tirthankars, respectively. It is a pre-Vedic religion which flourished in India even before the advent of the Aryans to this country.
Bibliography and References


3. Ibid. P. 91.
   
   


5. Ibid. P. 6.


8. Stevenson, Mrs Sinclair, Heart of Jainism, p. 5.


12. Ibid. P. 22


15. S. Radhakrishnan & Charles Moore (Editors) : Source Book of Indian Philosophy, p. 6.


17. Ibid P. 2.


20. Ācārya Tulsi : Pre-Vedic Existence of Sravana Culture, P. 255

21. Jain, Jyoti Prasād, Jainism, the oldest Living Religion P. 50

22. Gusheva Mr. N. R. : Jainism  p. 25.


24. Ibid. P. xvi.


27. Jain, Hiralal: **Contribution of Jainism to Indian Culture.** (Translated into Kannada by Anurao Mirji from Hindi) pp. 375-6
   Jaina Samskriti Samrakshaka Sangha, Sholapur.


29. Jain, Jyoti Prasad: **Jainism, the Oldest Living Religion.**


31. Macdonnel, A. A. **History of Samskrit Literature:** p. 299.

32. Forlong, J. R. G., **Shorter Studies in the Science of Contemporary Religions.** pp. 242-44

33. S. Radhakrishnan: **History of Philosophy, Eastern and western.** P. 139.

34. **Cultural Heritage of India, Vol. I,** p. 400
   Publication Division, Government of India, New Delhi.

   Srimad Rajachandra Ashram, Agas, Via Anana (Gujarat)

36. Jain, Jyoti Prasad, **Jainism, the Oldest Living Religion of India.** P. 41.


38. **Jaina Jagat (Hindi) Magazine,** April 1974. p. 11
   Bharat Jaina Mahamandal, Bombay 1.


41. *All India Reporter*, 1927 Madras 228,229
   (Gatteppa V Eramma)

42. Ibid. 1939 Bombay 377 (380) (Hirachand V Rowji)

43. Desai S. T. (Editor), *Mulla’s Principles of Hindu Law*,
    N. M. Tripathi Private Ltd., Bombay (1970)

44. *Mayne’s Treatise on Hindu Law and Usage*,
Chapter 11

THE TIRTHANKARAS AND LORD MAHAVIRA

The Tirthankaras and Lord Mahāvira.

Time (Kāla) is infinite according to the Jaina tradition, it is a substance which has kalpas (aeons) or cycles. Each cycle is divided into two eras; the avasarpiṇī and utsarpiṇī. The former is an era during which happiness and goodness go on decreasing while the latter era is one in which there is a gradual increase in piety, truth and goodness. Each of these two equal eras is divided into six ages or periods of unequal length, each with its own features. The present era is called avasarpiṇī and its six ages are: 1) susamā-susamā or the period of great happiness; 2) suṣamā or the period of happiness; 3) susamā-duḥṣamā or the period of happiness and some misery; 4) duḥṣamā-susamā or the period of misery and some happiness; 5) duḥṣamā or the period of misery 6) duḥṣamā-duḥṣamā or the period of great misery. The periods or ages of utsarpiṇī have the same names in the reverse order, commencing with duḥṣamā-duḥṣamā. Thus the first three of the avasarpiṇī Kāla and the last three of the utsarpiṇī Kāla are periods or ages of happiness.

In the earliest state of civilization, man knew neither the arts nor the occupations like agriculture. He depended wholly on fruits and roots for his diet, and leaves and barks of trees for his clothing. So the trees were called Kalpa-viṅgās as they yielded all that man needed or desired. This age was
followed by the ages of work and toil. This tradition is in conformity with modern researches which have disclosed that until the invention of tools, agriculture etc. man subsisted on fruits and roots of trees.

Evolution has been gradual. During that period, there appeared fourteen Kulakaras or Manus one after the other. It was these wise men that were responsible for the progressive changes in the world by the invention of new skills and arts and by introduction of order and new phases in the art of living. Pratiśruti, Sanmati, Kṣemāṅkara, Kṣemandhara, Sīmankara, Sīmandhara, Vimalavāhana, Cakṣumān, Yāśāvin, Abhicandra, Candrabha, Marud Deva, Prasenajit and Nabhi are the fourteen Manus or wise men who are the benefactors of mankind as they not only paved the way for comfortable living but also enlightened mankind on the basic rules of morality and goodness.

Rṣabh

The last Manu Nabhi had a wife by name Marudevi who gave birth to a son by name Rṣabha. Jaina tradition is unanimous in recognising Rṣabha as the first Tīrthankara. Samantabhadra says:

वेन प्रणीतं प्रथू धर्मतीर्थं ।
व्यषेठमू जनाः प्राप्य जयति दुःखम् ॥

Yena pranītam prathu dharmatīrtham,
Jyestham janāḥ prāpya jayanti duḥkham.

“A Tīrthankara is one who has laid down the principles of the highest religion with whose assistance people can conquer their sorrows.” He is also called an Arhanta or one who has conquered all enemies like lust, greed, etc. and destroyed all the destructive and non-destructive Karmas; his other name is Arhat or one who is worthy of respect. European scholars have interpreted the term Tīrthankara as meaning “a holy teacher”, or “a ford-maker” or “remover of all obstacles on the way to salvation”, or “boatman across the current of existence”. The royal emblem of Rṣabha was the bull. Since he taught
people how to grow sugarcane, his lineage came to be known as Ikṣyāku-vamsa. He taught people the art of domesticating animals and the use of bulls for cultivation of lands. He laid down and followed the path of Ahimsā and Truth. He organized the society into three occupational groups: agriculturists, traders and soldiers. The last group consisted of only able bodied men who could defend the country and maintain order in society. He ruled over his kingdom for several years. He had many sons, but of them, Bharata and Bāhubali are quite well-known. He led a life of great piety and purity.

"As a matter of fact, Lord Rṣabha laid the foundation of civic life and taught men how to co-operate with one another for mutual benefit. He taught 72 arts to men and 64 fine arts to women which included writing, painting, music etc. But the most important of his worldly teaching was the cultivation of grains and manufacturing of pots. As such, Prof. Lothar Wendel is right to call him "the Father of agriculture and culture, the greatest achievement of which was the recognition of soul, the basic fundamental for the sanctity of all life and for the manifestation of Ahimsā".

The details of his life as given in the Mahāpurāṇa and Padmapurāṇa of the Jainas are corroborated by the Hindu Purāṇas like the Bhāgavata and Śivapurāṇa. When Rṣabha was ruling his kingdom making the lives of his subjects happy and purposeful, an event of great significance occurred. While he was sitting one day in his Durbār, a dancer by name Nilāmjanā was brought there to dance. She began her dance to the accompaniment of music and when she had reached the climax of her graceful art, she suddenly collapsed and breathed her last. This incident was sufficient to convince him about the uncertainty and fleeting character of life. He decided to renounce the world.

Rṣabha crowned his eldest son Bharata as his successor. He distributed his kingdom amongst his sons including Bāhubali. It is due to the memorable reign of Bharata that India acquired
the renowned name of Bhāratavarṣa. Rṣabha parted with everything that he had and took to the life of a Śravaṇa. He went to Mount Kailāsa where he practised penance as a naked Muni. He attained Omniscience and preached the religion of Ahimsā, love and truth. He had 84 Gaṇadharaś or apostles who interpreted his sermons to the audience. Vṛṣabhasena, the younger brother of Bharata was the first to become the spiritual messenger of the Tirthankara. Somaprabha and Śreyāṃśa at whose place he accepted food after long fast, also became the apostles. His eldest daughter Brāhmī was the first to accept asceticism and become a nun. His second daughter Sundari was the next to join the order of nuns. It may be noted that according to tradition, Ṛṣabhadeva is credited with the invention of a script to teach his daughters and that it is for that reason that the script came to be known as Brāhmī script.

That Ṛṣabhadeva preached the gospel of Ahimsā is mentioned in the Vaiṣṇupurāṇa and Vāyupurāṇa, which only proves that the Tirthankara was respected even by the Hindus. After preaching his religion which came to be known as the religion of Jinas, he retired to Mount Kailāsa in the Himalayas and attained salvation or Nirvāṇa after destroying the agnītiya Karmas. He attained Nirvāṇa on the fourteenth day of the dark half of the month of Māgha.

Reference has already been made to the finds during the excavations at Harappa and Mohenjodaro where nude images of ascetics in Kāyotsarga and seals with emblem of bull have been found. Scholars have deduced from the numerous finds that the Indus Valley Civilization was a pre-Āryan civilization with the Ahimsā cult. From the absence of any weapons of war amongst the finds, scholars have informed that there might not have been wars and that the State administration must have been founded on the principle of non-violence. It is a good augury that such archeological discoveries and other evidences are gradually favouring the Jaina tradition of its antiquity.

During the present cycle of time, there were twenty-four Tirthankaras whose names and some other details are as follows:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Father</th>
<th>Mother</th>
<th>Place of Birth</th>
<th>Emblem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Rsabha or Ādinātha</td>
<td>Nābhirāja</td>
<td>Marudevī</td>
<td>Ayodhyā</td>
<td>Bull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Ajita-nātha</td>
<td>Jitaśatru</td>
<td>Vijayādevī</td>
<td>Ayodhyā</td>
<td>Elephant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Sāmbhava-nātha</td>
<td>Jitārī</td>
<td>Senā</td>
<td>Śrāvastī</td>
<td>Horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Abhinandana-nātha</td>
<td>Sāmvara</td>
<td>Siddhārtha</td>
<td>Ayodhyā</td>
<td>Monkey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Sumati-nātha</td>
<td>Megha-prabha</td>
<td>Sumaṅgalā</td>
<td>Ayodhyā</td>
<td>Curlew (<em>Kraunea</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Maṅgalā)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Supārśva-nātha</td>
<td>Supratisṭha (Pratisṭha)</td>
<td>Prithivi</td>
<td>Kāśi</td>
<td>Svastika</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Chandraprabha</td>
<td>Mahāsena</td>
<td>Laksmaṅga</td>
<td>Chandrapurī</td>
<td>Crescent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Puapadanta (Suvidhi-nātha)</td>
<td>Sugrīva (Supriya)</td>
<td>Rāmā</td>
<td>Kākandi</td>
<td>Crocodile (<em>makara</em>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Śītalānātha</td>
<td>Drdharatha</td>
<td>Sunandā(Nandā)</td>
<td>Bhadrikā-puri (Bhadrika)</td>
<td>Wishing tree (Srivatsa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Śreyāṃśa-nātha</td>
<td>Vīṣṇu</td>
<td>Vīṣṇudri (Vīṣṇā)</td>
<td>Simhāpurī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Vāsupūjya</td>
<td>Vasupūjya</td>
<td>Vijāyā (Jayā)</td>
<td>Champāpurī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Vimalanātha</td>
<td>Kṛtavarman</td>
<td>Surāmyā (Śyāmā)</td>
<td>Kāmpīlyā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ananta-nātha</td>
<td>Simhasena</td>
<td>Sarvayānā</td>
<td>Ayodhyā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Dharma-nātha</td>
<td>Bhānu</td>
<td>Suvratā</td>
<td>Rataṇapurī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Club (Vajradanda)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Śānti-nātha</td>
<td>Viśvasena</td>
<td>Acirā</td>
<td>Hastinā-pura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Kunthu-nātha</td>
<td>Śūrya (Sūra)</td>
<td>Śrīdevi</td>
<td>Hastināpura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Ara-nātha</td>
<td>Sudārśana</td>
<td>Mittrā- (Devi)</td>
<td>Hastināpura</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Mallinātha</td>
<td>Kumbha</td>
<td>Rakṣitā (Prabhāvatī)</td>
<td>Mithilā-puri (Mathurā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Muniśuvrata</td>
<td>Śuṁitra</td>
<td>Padmāvatī</td>
<td>Kuṣāgra-nagara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Nami-nātha</td>
<td>Vijaya</td>
<td>Vaprā (Viprā)</td>
<td>Mithilā-puri or Mathurā</td>
<td>Blue Lotus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Nemi-nātha</td>
<td>Samudravijaya</td>
<td>Śivā-devī</td>
<td>Śauripura or Dvārakā</td>
<td>Conch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Pārśva-nātha</td>
<td>Aśvasena</td>
<td>Vāmā</td>
<td>Kāśi</td>
<td>Serpent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Mahāvīra or Vardhamāna</td>
<td>Siddhārtha</td>
<td>Priyakārīṇī (Trīśalā)</td>
<td>Kundapura</td>
<td>Lion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Except Śaṅkha, Vāsṇapāya, Neminātha and Mahāvīra, all the Tīrthankaras attained Nirvāṇa on Mount Śammed (modern Parasnāth), in Bihar while the aforesaid four attained Nirvāṇa on the Mount Kailāsa, Champāpurī, Mount Girnār and Pāvā-puri respectively.

(Copied from the Table at the end of Chapter I of *Outlines of Jainism* by J. L. Jaini).
The details given in the Mahāpurāṇa about their parentage, about the dreams that the mother of each had at about the time of conception (garbhā-kalyāṇa), birth, (janma-kalyāṇa), ascension to the throne (kalyāṇa rājyārohaṇa), initiation (dikṣā-kalyāṇa) and attainment of Nirvāṇa (Mokṣa-kalyāṇa) are full of details. The gods led by Indra attended and actively participated in each function. Each Tīrthankara has a history of his previous births as man and beast until his last birth as a human being in which he attained Nirvāṇa and became a Jina. The first Tīrthankara was a person of stupendous height and his life span extended over millions of years.

The dreams dreamt by the mother of each of the Tīrthankaras must have been inserted in the Purāṇas to impress on the parents that they were to have a son who was destined to be a Jina and that austere life of purity and piety on their part was most essential. The worship and the celebrations on the five occasions called paṇca-kalyāṇa pūjās were perhaps necessary to create an awakening amongst the public and to herald to the world the advent of a new teacher. The descriptions about the height and span of life were intended to impress on the followers the physical and spiritual zenith each Jina had reached; it is not unlikely that the poet who visualized in his mind the most astounding strength and prowess, attributed the same to each of the Jinas in his poetic descriptions and thus impressed on his readers their divine grandeur and lustre all through their worldly existence. The bhavāvalī or the history of previous births and deaths is intended to emphasise the inexorable character of the law of karma operating in the life of every living being, however exalted might be the status he ultimately realized.

It is impossible to narrate the life-history of all the Tīrthankaras. Besides, the historicity of many of them is still shrouded in mythology. It would be too dogmatic to think that the Tīrthankaras were all mythological since the historicity of at least the last three of them is now recognised, even though some fifty years ago many scholars wrongly asserted that
Mahāvīra was the founder of Jainism. I would therefore refer only to such of them as are considered to be of historical environments.

Muni-Suvrata:

Muni-Suvrata is the 20th Tīrthankara who is said to have been born in the month of Vaiśākha, on the second day of the dark half of the month. He was born at Rājagṛha or Kuśāgrama. His father was Sumitrarāja while Padmāvatī was the name of his mother. His emblem was Tortoise. He attained salvation on the mūrti Pārabādha on the 12th day of the dark half of the month of Phālugama. Dr. Kamta Prasad has referred to the mention of Kārma-Rṣi in the Rigveda (2-3-27-32) as also to his teachings which it is possible to identify with this Tīrthankara. He also refers to Kārma Purāṇa. There is no other evidence.2

Ariṣṭanemi or Neminātha

Ariṣṭanemi has been mentioned in the Rigveda as already referred to. He was born at Mathurā on the second day of the bright half of the month of Śrāvana. His father was Samudravijaya while his mother was Śivādevi. Vasudeva, the father of Śri Kṛṣṇa was the younger brother of Samudra-vijaya. They belonged to Yādava Kshatriya clan. According to Jaina Purāṇa, king Ugrasena had a daughter by name Rājamatī. It had been settled that Neminātha should marry Rājamatī. So while he was proceeding in procession to the house of his father-in-law, he heard the groaning of some animals and saw some of them tied to pillars. When he questioned others, he was told that the animals were intended to be killed for food to some of the guests attending the marriage. His heart melted with pity and he drove back his chariot. He renounced the world and took to asceticism inspite of the entreaties of Shri Kṛṣṇa and other relatives. When Rājamatī came to know of the turn of events, she too abandoned her royal life and became a nun. He preached the religion of compassion, self-control
and renunciation in the kingdoms of Magadha, Pallava etc., before he retired to Gîrnâr where he attained Nirvâna after severe penance.

Reference has already been made to the mention of the name of Ariśṭanemi in the Vedas and to the opinion of Dr. Radhakrishnan who does not doubt the historicity of this Tirthankara. Dr. Prananath, whose reading of a copper-plate grant by the Babylonian King Nebuchadnazar I of 1140 B.C. has been published, has stated that the King had come to mount Revata to pay his homage to Lord Neminâtha. Dr. Fuherer has declared on the basis of his studies on the archeological discoveries at Mathurâ that Neminâtha was a historical personage. Dr. Kamla Prasad mentions that some inscriptions of Indo-Scythian period make express reference to this Tirthankara. It is stated in the Ādi Parvâ of the Mahâbhârata that the Epic War took place at the advent of Kali-era which is said to have commenced 3101 years B.C. Neminâtha was a cousin and a contemporary of Shri Krsna, though he did not participate in the War like the letter. The Jaina Purânas assign 2750 years before the birth of Pârśva as the year of his attainment of Nirvâna. This calculation almost tallies with the calculations made on the basis of Mahâbhârata War. Until further evidence of unimpeachable character becomes available, it may not be erroneous to accept these dates to uphold the historicity of Lord Neminâtha. In this connection, quite noteworthy is a paper “Before Mahâvira” by Dr. R. Williams published in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society (April 1966). In his opinion Nemi emerges from the background of the traditional hagiography with a profile at least as clear as that of Pârśva.”

Pârśvanâtha

He was followed by Lord Pârvânâtha who is the twenty-third Tirthankara. He was born at Vâranâsi. His father Viśvasena was then ruling over Kâsi which was his kingdom. His mother’s name was Brâhmi. He was born on the 11th day
of the dark half of the month Puṣya in the year 1039 B.C. According to tradition his birth took place 2,750 years after Lord Neminātha had attained Nirvāṇa. He belonged to Ugra Vaiśā and Kāśyapa-gotra. His royal emblem was a hooded cobra. He was a great reformer and had a stately personality. Even from his boyhood he was full of compassion.

It is usual to associate every great personality with some incidents that speak of his heroic power or divine nature.

It is said that when once the prince was walking in a forest, he saw an ascetic who was no other than Mahīpāla, his maternal grandfather. Mahīpāla had renounced the world on the death of his queen and gone to a forest to practise penance. He was then practising austere penance by being surrounded by five fires. Pārśva was hurt. Then Mahīpāla started cutting a tree for fuel to feed the fires around him. Prince Pārśvanātha understood by his mental powers that there were two living serpents in that branch of the tree which he was cutting. Thereupon, he advised the ascetic not to cut the tree as there were a male and a female serpents in it and that austerities of the type he was practising were not conducive to spiritual elevation. The ascetic did not heed his advice and went on thoughtlessly cutting the tree. To his great dismay, he saw two serpents emerging from the branch of the tree he had cut. The serpents were reeling with pain and were actually dying. Prince Pārśvanātha took pity on them and out of affection for them, repeated loudly the Paṇca-Namokāra-mantra before them. The snakes died while hearing the holy Mantra and were born in the Nāgaloka as Dharaṇendra and his queen Padmāvati. It may be mentioned that in most of the Jaina temples where there is the image of Lord Pāśvanāta as the presiding god, there are images of these two Yāśas and Yaksini.

When the prince attained thirty years of his age he heard that King Devasena of Sāketapura was celebrating the pañca-Kalyāṇa pūjas of Lord Kṣabhadeva. He went there and came to know how the Lord had renounced the world. He felt that life
was transitory and that there was in the himsā (injury) in name of religion. He decided to renounce the world much to the grief of his parents. He advised them about the ills of life and the greatness of true asceticism.

He went to a forest. On going there, he removed all his ornaments and clothes. He removed his hair with his own hands and started observing all the rules of conduct of a Śravāna. He observed fasts and penance. He acquired the manahparyāya Jhāna or the knowledge of reading the thoughts of others. He radiated all affection and purity. It is said that when he was deeply engrossed in his meditation, Śambharadeva who was no other than Mahāpāla in his next birth, started pouring heavy rains and trying to cause all sorts of pain. The two Nāgas-Dharanendra and Padmāvatī came to know it and spread their hoods on the Lord who was undisturbed by what was taking place. It is worthwhile to mention that the image of Lord Pārśvanātha has the hood of a cobra spread over his head like an umbrella. Cobra is his emblem.

Pārśvanātha continued his penances undisturbed and in full control of himself. At last, when he became absorbed in Śukladhyāna (lustrous meditation), he obtained Omniscience on the fourth day in the dark half of the month of Caiatra. He then started preaching the gospel of Jīna and called upon all people to observe the vows of Ahimsā, Truth, Non-stealing and Non-possessiveness or aparigraha. He went to different places in the country like Kāśi, Kosala, Magadha, Kalinga and Pāncāla etc. After preaching till he attained 69 years and 9 months of his age, he proceeded towards the Sammedagiri and became engrossed in meditation. When he had reached 100 years of age, he attained Nirvāṇa on the seventh day of the bright half of the month of Śrāvana in the year 939 B.C. The Sammedagiri which had been hallowed by the attainment of Nirvāṇa by 19 Tīrthankaras earlier came to be named after him as Pārśvanātha Hill which is regarded today as the holiest place of pilgrimage for Jainas.
The historicity of Lord Pārśvanātha is no longer in dispute as stated by Dr. Jacobi. The scenes of his life are found sculptured in the caves of Khandagiri and Udayagiri in Orissa. They belong to the second century B.C. The inscription of Indo-Scythian period found at Mathurā also establishes his antiquity. Dr. Zimmer has observed: “More striking still are those Jaina images of Pārśvanātha that represent him with two serpents sprouting from his shoulders; these point to a connection of some kind with ancient Mesopotamian art, and suggest something of that great antiquity of the symbols incorporated in the Jaina cult.”

The religion preached by Pārśvanātha was more comprehensive than the one preached by his predecessors. It appears from the conversation between Keśi, the follower of Pārśva and Gautama the follower of Vardhamāna as recorded in the Uttarādhyayana Sūtra that the three Jewels, viz, Right Faith, Right Knowledge and Right Conduct had already been part of the Jaina religion. Pārśva preached only the four śravakas as mentioned above thinking that aparigraha included celibacy also. Pārśva permitted the monks the use of an under and an upper garment. The explanation by Gautama is that the Tirthankara fixed what is necessary for carrying out the rules of the Dharma. It appears that the question of garment was not regarded as of much consequence since what was important was internal purity. It is recognised that the earlier Tirthankaras had preached sāmāyika (introspection) and sāmyama (self-restraint). Pratikramaṇa or repentance was prescribed for all breaches of rules of vows committed by a Śramaṇa. Besides Pārśva opened the minds of people to the futility of wrong practices and rituals for spiritual elevation and emphasised the need of perfect faith, knowledge and conduct for self-realisation.

Lord Mahāvīra

Mahāvīra is the last of the twenty-four Tirthankaras. It is now undisputed that he is not the founder of Jainism.
Mahāvīra was born on the 13th day of the bright half of the month of Chaitra in the year 599 B.C. His father Siddhartha, King of the Kundapura of the Jñātr clan in Vaisali. His mother was Triśalā, the daughter of Chetāka, a King of the Licchavi clan. She had another name Priyakārini. There is another tradition which regards her as the sister of Chetaka. The parents were the followers of the tradition of Lord Pārśvanātha. The child was first named Vīra, but since his birth, as the kingdom began to attain greater prosperity, he was called Vardhamāna. In some religious texts, he is called Jñātṛputra. In the Buddhistic literature he is called Nātaputta. According to tradition, he had been gifted at birth with matijñāna (perceptual knowledge), Śruta-jñāna (knowledge of the sacred lore) and manah-pariyaya jñāna (clairvoyance). He was thus born with all the intellectual and spiritual gifts which marked him out as a great religious teacher. He was educated as a prince. He possessed a gifted personality and a brilliant intellect. It is said that two sages Vijaya and Sanjaya who had heard about him, entertained doubts about his greatness. So they went to see him; but when they saw him actually, all their doubts were dispelled. They therefore called him Sanmati. Although he was born in a royal family, he had hardly any love of power or wealth. He perceived that every living being had a soul with the same potentialities of greatness as his own; his conduct towards every living creature was full of compassion and love. The material comforts had no attraction for him. Self-restraint was a way of life for him. He was sweet-tempered and bore no ill-will towards anybody.

A couple of stories built around him are very popular and may therefore be briefly referred to. One is that while he was in the palace, he saw people running about helter-skelter in fear. When he came out, he saw the royal elephant running madly frightening the citizens. He ran out at once, caught hold of the elephant by its trunk and pacified it in no time. His marvellous courage and self-control were subjects of high
admiration by the citizens. Similarly when he was playing in a garden with his friends, the latter were frightened by the approach of a terrifying cobra. While others tried to run away, the prince stood calm and when the cobra came near him, he caught hold of it and danced on its hood much to the amazement of his friends. Such a story is told about Śrī Kṛṣṇa also. It is said that it was on account of his brave acts like these that he was called Mahāvīra or Great Hero.

Mahāvīra thus grew up with all accomplishments and courage into a handsome youth. When he was about twenty-eight years old, his parents naturally thought of his marriage. On this point, there is a difference of view between the Digambara and the Śvetāmbara traditions. The former maintains that Mahāvīra declined to marry as he was always spiritually inclined and regarded marriage as a hindrance to spiritual progress. The Śvetāmbara version of his life-history is that he was married to Princess Yaśodā of Kalinga and had a daughter who was later married to Jamālī; the latter was his disciple for sometime but parted company later.

According to both the traditions, Mahāvīra took the vow of monk when he was thirty years old by which time his parents had died. He distributed his wealth in charity. He moved to forest where he cast off his clothes and pulled out his hair with his own hands. He spent most of his time in penance in caves and forests, on hills and mountain-peaks. He often suffered at the hands of cow-herds and other ignorant people, all kinds of privations and ill-treatment. It is said that when he was once engrossed in penance, a farmer asked him to look after his cattle and went away to his village for food. On his return, he found his cattle missing. He held the saint responsible for the disappearance of his cattle. He beat him but when he found him unmoved and smiling, he realised his folly and begged for pardon. He would observe fasts for days together as he used to get engrossed in deep meditations. He had acquired full
control over his body, mind and speech as he had set upon self-purification, which is a necessary pre-requisite for liberation of the self from the body. He was unmindful of social status and ignored the distinction between the high and the low. Once he accepted food from a girl by name Candana who was a slave in the house of a rich man by name Vṛṣabhadatta but was pure in heart and conduct. He did this when numerous rich house-holders were eagerly waiting to offer him food. Thus he tried by example to abolish distinctions based on birth and status.

He spent twelve years of his life in observing austerities and long spells of deep meditations. He went to Jāmbhikāgrāma or modern Jhiria in Bihar and took his seat under a sāl tree on the bank of the river Rijukula. He became engrossed in Śukladhyāna or lustrous meditation and destroyed the four destructive Karmas: Dārsanāvaraṇīya, Jñānāvaraṇīya, Mohāniya and Antarāya. He attained Kevala-jñāna or Omniscience. It was the 10th day of the bright half of Vaiśākha when he attained supreme knowledge and intuition.

When the Venerable Ascetic Mahāvīra had become a Jina and Arhat, he was a Kevalin, omniscient and comprehending all objects; he knew and saw all conditions of the world, of gods, men and demons: whence they come, whither they go, whether they are born as men or animals or become gods or hellbeings, the ideas, the thoughts of their minds, the food, doings, desires, the open and secret deeds of all the living beings in the whole world; he, the Arhat, for whom there is no secret, knew and saw all conditions of all living beings in the world, what they thought, spoke, or did any moment.

On coming to know that the Lord had obtained Omniscience, large number of people collected to worship the Arhat. Amongst them was one Indrabhūti Gautama, a reputed scholar in Vedic lore. The first sermon was delivered on the Vipulācala hill near Rājagrha. The Śvetāmbara version is that it was delivered
near Pāvānagar where they have built a temple. On hearing the
first Sermon, Indrabhūti Gautama had his doubts dispelled and
got new enlightenment. He and his followers including his
brothers Agnibhūti and Vāyubhūti sought for initiation into the
order of Śramanās and were so initiated. Indrabhūti Gautama
became the first Gaṇadhara or (apostle) the interpreter of the
sermons. This event was a great revolution in the spiritual
thinking in Magadha.

Mahāvira started preaching the principles of Ahimsā and
Truth, of self-control, self-reverence and self-knowledge as
leading man to salvation. He preached what he had realised
during the period of twelve years when he had turned his vision
inwards by penances and austerities. There used to be large
gatherings of people, irrespective of caste and creed, to hear his
sermons. According to Jaina traditions, such assemblies where
he held his sermons are known as Samavasarana or a refuge of
equality and equanimity, for all. He spent his rainy seasons
in many places including Vaiśāli, Rājagṛha, Nālandā, Mithilā
and Śrāvastī. Thousands of people who had thirst for spiritual
knowledge used to gather at the feet of the Lord. He spent his
rainy season at Pāvāpuri where on the 15th day of the dark
fortnight he breathed his last when he was sitting absorbed in
penance early before dawn. He annihilated his aghāṭīya
Karmas and attained Nirvāṇa in the morning of the Amāvāsyā
day, in the month of Asvija in 527 B. C. freeing himself from
the ties of birth, old-age and death. He became fully liberated
and became a mukta. The Kings of Kāsi, Kośala and Vaiśāli
celebrated the event with illuminations on the first new moon
day and said: “Since the light of intelligence is gone, let us
take an illumination of material matter”. Even to this day, the
day is observed as a festival day, a day of illumination, Dipāvalīv

The religion preached by Lord Mahāvīra is not a new
religion; it is the religion of the Jinas who had gone before him,
and popularised the basic principles of the greatness of Self.
The two basic principles of the Universe are Jīva and Ajīva.
They are connected with each other from the beginning. It is the activities of the mind, speech and body that are responsible for entanglement of the soul with Karma which it is possible to prevent and eradicate by austerities, observance of the principles of religion and by meditation. Man is the architect of his own destiny. The goal of his life is attainment of infinite Faith, knowledge and bliss so as to be free from the fetters of the Karmas. The principles of Ahimsā (Love) and Satya (Truth) have guided the destinies of our country and of other countries that have abided by them. Mahatma Gandhi used them as his armour in our country’s struggle for freedom and proved that they are not weapons of the weak but of the brave.

Mahāvira delivered his sermons in the language of the people, viz., Ardhamāgadhi. His disciples have collected his teachings under twelve titles called the Dādasāngas or the Twelve Scriptures. His message is not one of “empty heart”. He emphasised that life had a meaning and could be purposeful only if one lived it with an awareness of its sacred goal. It is a message of hope for a life of piety and love.

Mahāvira preached celibacy (brahmacarya) as a separate vow so as to make the total number of vows five: viz. Ahimsā, Satya, Acaurya, Brahmacarya and Aparigraha. He also constituted the community into a Sangha consisting of the Munis (Monks), Arjikās (Nuns), Śrāvakas (male house-holders). For the first two classes, he prescribed the five vows as Mahāvratas or the big vows while the same were termed Anuvratas or small vows for the lay men and lay women. The big vows implied that the votary was to observe them with greater rigour and minuteness, exercising greater care and meticulousness in the observance of each vow in all aspects. He evolved eleven stages (pratimās) amongst the lay men and lay women commencing from the cultivation of Right Faith till the final stage of having the minimum clothing. He also emphasised that for averting the effects of transgressions, sincere repentances for every lapse was efficacious. He preached that austerities and regular observance of vows were essential for preventing the influx of fresh karmas.
Gaṇadharaś (Apostles)

Before closing this topic, reference must be made to the Gaṇadharaś who interpreted the principles of Bhagavān Mahāvīra after he had started preaching his gospel on attaining omniscience. The first scholar to do this work was Indrabhūti Gautama. He was a Brahmin well-versed in Vedic lore. He entertained some doubts about the interpretation of some metaphysical principles. On hearing of the Omniscient Lord, he went to him to know what was meant by the six dravyas, the five astikāyas and the seven principles etc. He was fully satisfied with the interpretation of those principles by the Tīrthankara. Mahāvīra preached what life was, what the meaning of Karma was and how Karma was responsible for different births and rebirths. Indrabhūti felt enlightened and became a convert along with his five hundred disciples to the religion of Śramana. After this, the two brothers of Indrabhūti, viz., Agnibhūti and Vāyubhūti, were also erudite scholars of Vedic faith and they too had their doubts clarified.

Besides these three brothers, there were eight other Brahmin and Kṣatriya scholars who were similarly attracted by the preachings of Mahāvīra and they too became converts to his faith along with their disciples. They are: Sudharma, Mauryaputra, Maundrya, Putra, Maitreyā, Akampāna, Acelaka and Prabhava.

Of these Gaṇadharaś, Indrabhūti Gautama was the wisest and possessed sound powers of exposition. He therefore, became the first Gaṇadhara who not only interpreted the sermons of Mahāvīra but also reduced them to writing.

The Great Teacher went about from place to place preaching to all people irrespective of caste and creed the principles of the five vows, of the path of salvation and of self-control and self-knowledge. Many great rulers of the time like Śreniikā and Ajātaśatru of Magadha, Chetaka of Vaiśāli, Prasenajit of
Srāvasti, flocked to hear his sermons and became his followers.

Of the eleven Gaṇadharaś, only two of them, Gautama and Sudharmā, survived Mahāvīra while the rest of them adopted the vow of Sallekhanā at different times at Rājagṛha and attained salvation.

After the Nirvāṇa of Mahāvīra, Indrabhūti Gautama lived for about 12 years and attained omniscience. Sudharmā then assumed the spiritual leadership and he too attained omniscience. He was followed by Jambūsvāmi who was the last to attain omniscience.

After Jambūsvāmi had attained salvation in 403 B.C. Prabhava continued the leadership of Jaina thought and died in 397 B.C. It was during his time that the two sects of Oṣvāla Jaina and Śrīmāla Jaina arose.13 It may be noted that up to Jambūsvāmi, there is unanimity between Digambara and Śvetāmbara traditions. Thereafter, the Śvetāmbara tradition gives the names of Prabhava, Svayambhava, Sambhūtivijaya and Bhadrabāhu while the Digambara tradition mentions the names of Viśṇu, Nandī, Aparājita, Govardhana and Bhadrabāhu. These are called the Śruta-kevalins who did not attain omniscience like their three predecessors.12

It is an outstanding event of history that it was this Bhadrabāhu who was the Guru of Chandragupta of the Maurya dynasty who migrated to the South along with his 12,000 disciples as he sensed a famine of terrible severity. Chandragupta also accompanied his Guru and the inscriptions at Śravānabelagola and elsewhere bear ample testimony to this great event in the spread of Jainism in Southern parts of India. Chandragupta became a Jaina ascetic after abdicating his throne in 297 B.C. and died twelve years later at Śravānabelagola after adopting the vow of Sallekhanā.13
Bibliography and References


2. Ibid. PP. 67-70.


10. Ibid. (Kalpa Sutra) P. 266.


12. Muni Sushila: *Jaina Dharma* (Hindi) P. 41. All India Svetamber Sthankavasi Bhavan.

13. Stevenson, Mrs. Sinclair: *Heart of Jainism*, P. 70. (Foot Note)
CHAPTER III

AFTER MAHAVIRA AND THE SCHISM

It is immensely difficult to be the torchbearer of a great Master. Mention has already been made that Indrabhūti Gautama was initiated into the Order of Śrāvānas along with his two brothers and that Gautama became the first Gaṇadhara or the Apostle. Of the eleven gaṇadharas or apostles, Indrabhūti and Sudharma were the only persons to survive their Master. Mahāvīra was the head of an excellent community of 14000 monks; 36000 nuns, 159000 male lay-votaries and 31800 female lay-votaries. Indrabhūti attained liberation 12 years after his Master had attained Nirvāṇa. Sudharma followed him eight years later. Jambūsvāmi was the disciple of of Sudharman and he attained Nirvāṇa 64 years after the Nirvāṇa of Mahāvīra.

Bhadrabāhu and Śilabhadra were contemporaries in the sixth generation after Sudharman had attained liberation. It is natural that there should be differences between the groups of followers about the tenets preached by the Tīrthankara. Even during the life time of Mahāvīra, Makkhali Gosāla and Jamāli had differences with their Master and broke away from him. The former started his own sect of Ājīvikas while the latter founded a sect known as Bahurata.

It appears from the Buddhistic literature that there used to be quarrels amongst the monks who were followers of Mahāvīra. From the accounts given in the Dīghanikāya, it appears that the quarrels relate to the correctness or superiority of knowledge
of the tenets as propounded by Mahāvīra. Sometimes, there used to be serious exchanges of words; assaults were not unusual.

It is very difficult to say that these quarrels gave rise to the new sects. It appears that even during the time of Pārśva, there used to be some monks who wore short loin clothes but they had no differences either with their Master or with his successor. There are, however, differing accounts of the birth of new schisms. There are some legends also.

The migration of Bhadrabāhu along with a body of 12000 monks to the South sometime between 296 or 298 B.C, is a landmark in the history of Jainism. The first inscription of 600 A.D. at Śravanabelagola in Karnataka refers to this event and the relevant part may be quoted here: “Now indeed, after the sun Mahāvīra who had risen to elevate the whole world and who had shone with a thousand brilliant rays, his virtues which caused the blooming of the lotuses, the blessed people, nourished the lake of the supreme Jaina doctrine which was an abode of pre-eminent virtues had completely set, Bhadrabāhu svāmi, of lineage rendered illustrious by a succession of great men who came in regular descent from the venerable supreme rśi Gautama-gaṇadhara, his immediate disciple Lohācārya, Jambu, Viṣṇudeva, Aparājita, Govardhana, Bhadrabāhu, Viśākha, Prośhila, Krutikārya, Jayanāma, Siddhārtha, Dhṛiṣṭena, Buddhīla and other teachers, who was acquainted with the true nature of the eight-fold great omen and foretold in Ujjayani a calamity lasting for a period of twelve years, the entire Sangha (or the community) set out from the North to the South and reached by degrees a country with many hundreds of villages and filled with happy people...”

According to the tradition, Chandragupta Maurya who was Emperor abdicated his throne and accompanied the Śrutakevalin. Two inscriptions (Nos. 17 & 18 on the Chandragiri Hill and two others found near Śrīrangapattānam mention Bhadrabāhu and Chandragupta as two ascetics. That the two came together to Śravanabelagola is
confirmed by a Kannada work ‘Munivamśābhyudaya’ by a poet called Cidānandakavi who wrote his work in 1680 A. D.

The historicity of this event has been doubted by some scholars. R. Narasimhacharya has referred to Dr. Leumann as saying that the migration to the South is “the initial fact of the Digambar tradition”. Dr. Hoernle after a critical examination of the Jaina paṭṭāvalis or the lists of succession of Gurus, says: “Before Bhadrabāhu, the Jain community was undivided; with him, the Digamburas separated from the Śvetāmbaras... The Digambara separation originally took place as a result of the migration southwards under Bhadrabāhu in consequence of a severe famine in Bihar, the original home of the undivided Jaina community”. R. Narasimhacharya opines that the Jaina tradition may be accepted as a working hypothesis until the contrary is proved by future research. S. R. Sharma has stated that “the conclusion of the late Dr. V. A. Smith, regarding the possibility of the persistent tradition about Chandragupta Maurya having accompanied Bhadrabāhu (the last of the Jaina Śrūtakṛtaśrama) to Mysore and died there by Sallekhanā may be accepted without more ado.” Recent researches have not brought out to light any contrary evidence.

The Śvetāmbara tradition has two versions about the division of the community: (1) Bhadrabāhu went to Nepal and remained there engaged in meditation. During his absence, Sthūlabhadra called an assembly of all followers and the canonical texts of the twelve Angas. The Digambras did not accept the authenticity of the scriptures, as they believed that the original texts were lost long ago. So there was a division in the community. (2) There was a monk by name Śivabhūti. Prior to his initiation, he was in the service of a king. When he accepted asceticism, the King gave some beautiful clothes including a blanket. Śivabhūti’s Guru asked him to throw away those clothes as their possession would involve attachment to property. Śivabhūti declined to do so. Then the Guru himself tore those clothes. Śivabhūti got angry, separated from his master and started a new sect of the Śvetāmbaras.
None of these two versions has any historical support. It appears to me that the divisions in the community must have been gradual and must have assumed a definite shape at some period. After the departure of Bhadrabāhū Śrutakevalin to the South, Sthūlabhadra and his disciples remained in the North. There is little doubt that there were Digambaras in the North at the time of the invasion of India by Alexander (327-326 B. C.) as the Greek historians have referred to them as gymnosophists, that is, naked Philosophers. There appear to have been some monks during the time of Pārśva who wore a loin cloth. Mahāvira himself adhered to the cult of nudity. Hence the practice of wearing a loin cloth did not assume any importance in his time. P. Bechardas, a Śvetāmbara Pandit expresses the view that it was only after the Nirvāṇa of Jambūsvāmi that laxity in conduct must have started, departing from the rigorous rules laid down by Mahāvira and that the poison tree of division seems to have started growing.

The monks started using white clothes for covering part of their bodies and possessing some wooden pots. The practice of adorning the idols of Tīrthankaras with gold and diamond ornaments and silk cloth came into vogue. S. Gopalan holds the view that the division became permanent in 83 A. D. 6 Hermann Jacobi opines that the sect of Ardhaphalakas developed in 80 A. D. into the Śvetāmbara sect and observes: "It is possible that the separation of the Jaina church took place gradually, an individual development going on in both the groups living at a great distance from one another, and that they became aware of their mutual difference about the end of the 1st century A. D. But the difference is small in their articles of faith." 7 J. L. Jaini holds similar views: The division of the Jaina community into two sects of Śvetāmbaras, "white-robed" and Digambaras, "sky-robed", i.e. naked, took place according to their concurrent testimony, 609 years after Mahāvira, i.e. about 80 A. D. But in germ it existed as early as the time of the First Council. 8
A. L. Basham is quite positive in his views: "Out of this migration arose the great schism of Jainism, on a point of monastic discipline. Bhadrabahu, the elder of the community, who had led the emigrants, had insisted on the retention of the rule of nudity, which Mahavira had established. Stulabhadra, the leader of the monks who had remained in the North, allowed his followers to wear white garments, owing to the hardships and confusions of the famine. Hence arose the two sects of Jainas, the Digambaras ("space-clad" or naked), and the Svetambaras ("White-clad"). The schism did not become final until the 1st Century A. D." Mrs. Stevenson also says the division became final in A. D. 79 or 82. 16

Though there never were any fundamental doctrinal differences between the two sects, the division continues to this day. The minor differences between the two sects are: (1) The Svetambara monks wear white clothes and their idols are decorated with gold and diamond ornaments, with glass eyes and silk jackets. The Digambara monks of the ideal type are naked as also their idols of Tirthankaras. (2) Digambaras hold that on account of their physical conditions and social disabilities, women as women cannot attain liberation. The Svetambaras hold the contrary view. (3) It has already been noted that according to the Digambara tradition Mahavira was unmarried while Svetambaras hold that he was married and had a daughter. (4) The Svetambaras believe in the validity and sacredness of canonical literature that is the twelve Angas and Sutras as they exist now while Digambaras hold that the original and genuine texts were lost long ago. (5) The Svetambaras hold the view that the Omniscient or the liberated Kevalins took food while the Digambaras do not support it. (6) The Svetambaras hold that seventeenth Tirthankara Mallinatha was a female by name Malli while the Digambaras hold that he was male. (7) The Svetambara monks collect their food from different houses while the Digambara monks take food standing in one house only where there preconceived idea (sankalpa) is fulfilled.
Digambaras

The ideal ascetics of this sect are naked. They possess a small bunch of peacock feathers (piccha) for the purpose of delicately moving aside living insects etc if there be any before sitting on a ground or a plank. They also carry a kamandalu or a kind of wooden pot for water which they carry when they go out to answer the calls of nature. They take food only once by the use of their palms joined together to serve as a plate. Though it had been enjoined that they should stay in gardens and uninhabited house, they have started staying in villages and towns. Gunabhadra has expressed his displeasure in regard to this change of life. This laxity seems to have continued until some monks started living in temples. This did not develop into a regular practice as in the case of Śvetāmbaras.

Even amongst the Digambaras, some groups or Sanghas seem to have developed. Mīla Sangha seems to have been popular as it is mentioned in some of the inscriptions at Śravaṇabelagola. During the time of Indranandi, Sanghas like Vīra, Aparājita Sena, Bhadra Simha, Candra etc. seem to have come into existence in course of time. They received recognition at the time of Arhadbali. In Vikrama Śamvat 753 Kumar Sena Muni established the Kāstha Sangha. They started using a bunch (piccha) of hair of cattle-tail instead of feathers of peacocks. They used to initiate women as nuns and administer the oath of celibacy to them. Two hundred years later, a Sangha known as Mathurāsangha came to be founded in Mathura. The monks of this Sangha dispensed with piccha altogether. One Vajrasūri seems to have started a Sangha by name Dravida-sangha. Though there was laxity in their conduct, they used to have temples repaired and receive gifts of lands etc. for the use of temples.

Sub-sects amongst Digambaras

There are three sub-sects amongst the Digambaras, viz. (1) Terāhapantha (2) Bisapantha and (3) Tārāhapantha. There
are also some minor sects in South India like Panchamas, Caturtha, Bogara, Setavala etc. but they seem to have originated on the basis of occupations; they are not mentioned in any of the books or other records of historical value.

i) Terāhapantha

The heads of Jaina Maṭhas were called Bhaṭṭārakas. They possessed property and other paraphernalia incidental to their office. A section of the community seems to have taken objection to their way of life and stopped respecting them or saluting them. One Banārasīḍada, a resident of Agra seems to have headed this opposition sometime in the 18th century. The group came to be known as Terāhapanthi. The followers do not respect the Bhaṭṭārakas. They are opposed to decorating the idols. They prohibit the use of flowers and saffron in the worship. This group spread to all parts of India.

ii) Bisapantha

The supporters of the Bhaṭṭārakas styled themselves as Bisapanthis. They follow the customary practices of worship of naked idols. They use flowers and scented agarbattis (incense sticks) at the time of worship and make offerings of fruits etc.

These groups continued to live in peace and luckily there have been no quarrels between them. They accept the scriptures of Digambaras.

iii) Tāraṇapanaṇtha

One person by name Tāraṇataraṇasvāmi who died in Malhargadha in the former princely state of Gwalior in 1515 A. D. was the originator of this creed. The place of his Samādhi is regarded as a place of pilgrimage by his followers. They prohibit idol worship. They build temples but keep sacred books for worship. They do not offer articles like fruits and flowers at the time of worship. Besides the books sacred
to the Digambaras, they also worship the books written by their Acāryas. Their population is mostly confined to Madhya Pradesh.

Sub-sects among Śvetambaras

There are three sub-sects among the Śvetāmbaras; Mūrtipūjaka, Sthānakavāsi and Terāpanthi. Reference has already been made about the features of Śvetāmbara monks. Apart from wearing white clothes, they worship idols bedecked with ornaments, costly silks and diamonds. The monks began to reside in temples and began to make accumulations of money etc. They eat food and delicacies brought by women and make use of scents, dhūpa etc. for worship. They sing and make predictions on astrological data. There are many gachhā among them like Upakesagachha, Kharatara, Tapāgaccha etc.

Caitya-vāsi (Temple Residents)

Even though there are differences of opinions about the precise data of the origin of this sub-sect, it appears to have originated in the beginning of the 4th Century A. D. Kalyānavijayaji takes the view that it might have originated before 355 A. D. The followers of this sect gave up the idea of residing in vihāras or rest-houses and started residing in temples with the growth of laxity in behaviour. Their number increased in course of time. They maintain that it is proper for the ascetics to reside in temples during the present times. Haribhadrasūri has criticised this practice and has protested against their use of scents, flowers and fruits, taking food twice or thrice, taking bath using oils, purchase children to make them disciples, resort to practice of mantras and tantras and prevent people going to ascetics who behave in accordance with the scriptures. They have been subjected to criticism by Jinavallabha, Jinadatta and other later ascetics. In about 745 A. D. or so, the king of Anahilapura by name Chāvada issued an order at the instance of Silagunāsūri prohibiting the entry into town of ascetics other than Caitya-vāsis. This order was got changed in about
1013 A. D. after Jiñāsvarṣūrī and Buddhissāgara-śūrī defeated the ascetics of this school in the Darbar of king Durabhadeva in the discussions on the sanction of the Sacred Books for the different schools. Thereafter, the Caityavāsīs decreased in strength, and those who style themselves as “Yati” or “Śrīpūya” amongst the Śvetāmbaras belong to that school. Those who style themselves as “Samvegi” are the followers of forest-dwelling ascetics.

**Sthānakavāsī**

This sect was founded by Lomkāśāhā who was born in about 1415 A. D. in a village by name Arahatawada of the former Sirohi State, now in Gujarat. He was born in an Oswal family. At the age of twenty-five, he went to Ahmedabad where Mohamed Shah was ruling. He became acquainted with Lomkashaha during certain transactions of sale of diamonds. Mohmad Shah became very pleased with Lomkashaha due to skill shown by him and appointed him as the custodian of the iron safe where he had kept all his ornaments. When Mohmed Shah died due to poisoning, he became very unhappy and left his service. He was employed by a Muni by name Jñānaśri, being pleased with his handwriting, to copy the scriptures. He copied a number of scriptures and while doing so, he used to keep one copy for himself. In course of time, he found that the type of idol-worship which was then in vogue had not the sanction scriptures. So he undertook to reform the Jaina religion and those who crowded at Ahmedabad to hear his preachings were greatly influenced by him and requested him to accept them as his followers. Lomkashaha declined on the ground that he was still a house-holder. Jñānaśri Muni initiated him into asceticism and hence was born the Lomkā- gaccha. There is however another version that Lomkāshāhā left the service of the Shah when he was overcome with pain and pity on seeing a Muslim engaged in hunting. The followers of this school of thought came to be known as Dhumdhiyas, also called Sthānakavāsīs because they carry on their religious
duties in Sthānaka which are like prayer halls. The followers of the school are largely to be found in Gujarat, Marwar, Kathewar etc. They regard themselves as part the Śvetāmbara-sect.

There are however differences between the Sthānaka-vāsis and the Śvetāmbaras in the observance of religious practices. The Sthānaka-vāsis do not build temples, do not believe in the worship of idols and do not have faith in places of pilgrimage. They tie a white piece of cloth to their mouth. Like Lomkāshāh, they admit the authenticity of only 31 of the scriptures. In about the 18th century Satyavijaya Muni advised the Śvetāmbaras to wear yellow clothes to distinguish them from the Sthānaka-vāsis and that practice is still in vogue to this day.

Non-idolatry-Terāhapanthis

This sub-sect was established in Marwar by one Āchārya Bhikshu or Bhikamaṛṣi. He was born in about 1860 A. D. in Kantalia, then in Jodhpur State but now in Rajasthan, and was initiated as a monk in 1885 A. D. (Samva 1803). He founded this sect on the plea that though Ahimsā was foundation of religion we were resorting to Himsā in our daily affairs and that we were practising irreligion in place of religion. The head of the Munis is respected by all the members of the Sangha who carry out his directions in their daily life. They have to salute him everyday according to usual practice. Though there are followers of this sect in Calcutta and other towns, they are to be found in big numbers in the Western part of India.

Yāpaniya Sangha

Besides the Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras, there was an ancient Sangha called the Yāpaniya Sangha; it was also called the Gaupya Sangha. This tradition seems to have been founded
by a Śvetāmbara monk by name Śrīkalaśa in about the year 148 A. D. Since this was about 70 years after the division of the community into two sects as noted already, the new creed seems to be a compromise of the traditions of both. This seems to have taken birth somewhere in North Karnataka. A large number of allusions to the Yāpaniyaś found in the epigraphs of the Kannada country as contrasted with their almost total absence in other regions show that the Yāpaniyaś were rather exclusively, a product of Karnataka Jainism and that they grew from strength to strength and developed several monastic orders of their own, encouraged by the ruling class and supported by the sections of the populace in many parts of Karnataka from fifth century to the fourteenth century A. D.

Two strongholds of the Yāpaniya monks have been in the Saundatti Taluka of the Belgaum District, one at Hosur and the other at Manoli.¹⁰

This creed seems to have developed a very liberal outlook. The founders adopted a reformist attitude, though they adhered to some of the important traits common to Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras. While their monks were naked, they moved with a bunch of peacock-feathers and took their food in their hands. They worshipped nude idols and blessed the saluting devotees; ‘May true religion thrive’ (Satdharma-yiddhirastu). They accepted the Śvetāmbara belief that women can also attain salvation and that Kevalins could accept food from them. Grammarian Sakalāyana, also known as Palyakīrti, belonged to this tradition. The works composed by him were read by the followers. They accepted some of the Sacred Books based on the Śvetāmbara traditions.

The Yāpaniyaś seem to have been very liberal. They accepted that the followers of other doctrines including even house-holders can attain salvation. These generous persuasive practices secured warm welcome to the monks wherever they went. The same sense of accommodation and capacity for
adaptability must have been responsible for the popularisation of the Yakṣī cult and also for the ceremonial and ritualistic innovations in the worship of gods by the Jaina priests in South India. The Yāpanīyas and their views met with an opposition from the conservative sections of the community. Their popularity was mainly due to flexibility in religious precepts, free movement among the masses, grant of minor concessions to other creeds, introduction of Yakṣa and Yakṣīni cult, establishment of religious institutions owing to the generous grants from the rulers and the public, and encouragement to women to enter the monastic order.

It is difficult to say when the new school of thought disappeared, in spite of the popularity of its doctrines and influence of its monks and nuns on public life. It seems to have survived till the end of the 15th Century A. D. as evidenced by inscriptions mentioning the death of two saints by name Dharmakirti and Nāgacandra in Vikrama Samvat 1451, found at Kagwad in Belgaum District.

Mention is made in some books about the tradition of Ardhaephyālaka, particularly by Śrī Rattanāndi Ācārya in his 'Life of Bāhubali'. Rattanāndi has stated that the monks of this sect used to cover their nakedness by a piece of cloth. It can therefore be inferred that this sect was in vogue just before the Śvetāmbara sect fully developed into a division of the Jaina community.

Whatever may be the number of divisions, all schools are unanimous in recognising the Tīrthankaras and the principles preached by them. The differences are superficial in that they pertain more to form than to the substance of theology, ethics and metaphysics of the Jaina religion.
Bibliography and References

1. Mohanlal Mehta: *Jaina Culture*
   Sohanlal Jain Dharma Pracarak Samiti, Amritsar, (India).

2. R. Narasimhačar: *Carnatica Ephigraphica* Vol. II
   P. 1, Mysore Government, Bangalore.


5. Sharma S. R.: *Jainism and Karnataka Culture*,
   PP. 5-6. Karnataka Historical Research Society, Dharwad.


   Jaina Sahitya Samshedhaka Karyālaya, Ahmedabad.


    Edited by J. L. Jaini, Central Jain Publishing House
    Ajitashram, Lucknow.

12. Mirji Anvarao: *Jainism (Kannada)* PP. 89-1, Shānti Seva Sadan, Shedbal (Dist. Belgaum).


    Jaina Samskṛiti Sāmakṣaka Saṅgha, Sholapur.

Chapter VI

CONCEPT OF GOD AND OF WORSHIP

It is not unusual to hear people criticising Jainism as an atheistic religion. Such of the criticising as are followers of the Hindu theistic philosophy base their view on three grounds: The Jainas do not believe in a personal god, the authority of the Vedas and in the existence of the life beyond. It must be conceded that the Jainas do not accept the authority of the Vedas because the teachings of the Tirthankaras are opposed to the Vedic type of rituals, the sacrifices and the existence of numerous gods extolled therein. The Jainas accept rebirth and the existence of life after death.

The word Nāsti has been differently interpreted. Pāṇini’s śūtra (asti nāsti distaṁ matiḥ) has been interpreted to mean that he who does not accept paraloka or life after death is a nāstika. According to the Nyāyakośa, a nāstika is a person who does not accept the existence of Iśvara. Manu has said that he who derides the authority of the Vedas is a Nāstika (Nāstika Vedanindakaḥ). Acceptance of the authority of the Vedas does not enter into the concept of atheism. "Atheism, both by etymology and usage, is essentially a negative conception and exists only as an expression of dissent from the positive theistic beliefs. Theism is the belief that all entities in the cosmos, which are known to us through our senses or inferred by our imagination and reason, are dependent for their origination and for their continuance in existence upon the creative and causal action of an infinite and eternal Self-consciousness and Will; and in its higher stages, it implies that
the Self-existent Being progressively reveals his essence and character in the ideas and ideals of His rational creatures, and thus stands in personal relationship with them. In the earlier stages, theism conceives of God simply as the Cause and Ground for all finite and dependent existences; but as it develops, it realises the idea of God as as immanent and self-manifesting as well as creative and transcendent.  

यो यो यां यां तनु भक्तः श्रद्धार्थार्थितमिच्छति ।
तस्य तस्याचलो श्रद्धा तमेव विनिधान्यवहम् ॥२९॥
स तया श्रद्धया युक्तस्तःस्त्याराधनमिहे ।
लभते च तन: कामानुसरयं विषितानि सिनानु ॥२२॥
भगवद्गीता, अध्याय ३.

It seems to me that the term atheism itself appears to have undergone a change in its meaning just as the idea of God has varied with the founders of different religions.

The most common concept of a personal God is that he is the supreme being who creates the world and rules over it; he presides over the destinies of all living creatures and awards rewards or punishments according to the merits or sins committed by each individual. In the Bhagavad-gītā, Śrī Kṛṣṇa says: If any devotee desires to worship the idol of a God with devotion, I grant him unshakeable faith in that God only. He worships that God endowed with that faith and he gains his desires, for it is I who bestow the same on him."

As regards His attribute of power of creation Swami Vivekananda said: "What makes this creation? God. What do I mean by the use of the English word God? Certainly not the word as ordinarily used in English—a good deal of difference. There is no other suitable word in English. I would rather confine myself to the Sanskrit word Brahman. He is the general cause of these manifestations. What is Brahman? He is eternal, eternally pure, eternally awake, the almighty, the
all-knowing, the all-merciful, the omnipresent, the formless, the partless. He creates this universe."

During the primitive days of civilization, man regarded the most powerful elements of nature, like fire, wind, rain etc as gods. He must have wondered nursing over impregnable nature and conceived of many forms as worthy of worship by propitiating through various kinds of offerings including sacrifice of animals etc. Referring to ancient Judaism which regards Jehovah as the Maker of the Universe and of two human beings Adam and Eve, Robert Bridges, the former Poet Laureate of England wrote:

"I wondered finding only my own thought of myself, and regarding there that man was made in God's image and knew not yet that God was made in the image of man; nor the profounder truth that both these truths are one, no quibbling scoff—for surely as mind in man groweth so with his manhood groweth his idea of God, wider ever and worthier, until it may contain and reconcile in reason all wisdom, passion and love, and bring at last (may God so grant) Christ's peace on Earth."

If we consider the concepts of numerous faiths in the world, we would know undoubtedly that the forms of God as conceived in Purāṇas and mythologies are legion and that these Gods are supposed to protect their devotees from evils or grant them their desires if they were pleased with their worship and offerings. Amongst the Hindus, the Trinity of Brahma, Viṣṇu and Maheśa has been popular in conception. The followers of Viṣṇu and Maheśa or Śiva regard their own God as worthy of worship and the other as a subordinate God. Amongst them, we have stories of Viṣṇu with his ten Avataras always ready to protect the weak and to save his devotees from the hands of the wicked. Sarasvatī, Lakṣmi and Pārvati are respectively the wives of these gods. Numerous legends have been told of Śiva also. There are many lesser gods, like Indra, Yama, Varuṇa
Kubera etc. It is unnecessary to refer to their functions and powers in the scheme of preservation or protection of the universe.

Jainism does not recognise that the universe was created by any God or gods. The universe is external and uncreated. It is subject to integration and dissolution in its forms and aspects. It is constituted of six substances viz. Soul, matter, time, space, principle of motion, the principle of stationariness. It is a compound of these substances. Soul is characterised by consciousness while the matter is not. That is consistent with scientific theories. From the standpoint of reality, the soul is free and formless. Matter has form. The number of souls in the universe is infinite.

The Jaina idea of God is that of a pure soul possessed of infinite faith, knowledge, bliss and power. These qualities are inherent in the soul itself but they are either destroyed or veiled by the four kinds of Karmas: Darśanāvarāṇiya, Jñānāvarāṇiya, Mohanīya, and Antarāya. Perfect faith is attained by the destruction of the first kind of Karma while perfect knowledge is attained by the total destruction of the second kind of Karma. Infinite happiness and power are attained by the destruction of the other two Karmas. The four qualities are not a gift from anybody but they are inherent in the very nature of the soul. The Jaina philosophers call such an Arhat who is popularly called God, Sarvajña, Vitārāga, Paramātmā, Jina etc. He is essentially a conqueror of all passions and attachments. He is also called Āpta or the Tīrthankara as he has shown the path of liberation from the miseries and the travails of the Samsāra. He is characterised by absolute freedom from eighteen kinds of weaknesses viz. hunger, thirst, fear, aversion, attachment, illusion, anxiety, pride, displeasure, astonishment, birth, sleep and sorrow. From the realistic point of view, the Arhat is without a body while from the popular point of view, he possesses a body known a Audārika which has the brilliance of thousand suns.
Concept of God and of Worship

Such a God is full of effulgence due to infinite knowledge and bliss. He has no desires or duties. He does not interfere in the affairs of men or inflict upon himself the management of worlds, and he would not waste his time in creative activity in any form. A God should have no unfulfilled purpose, or unsatisfied cravings or ambitions; and, for this reason, he should not manage or create a world.5

The concept of Arhat or God is quite consistent with the view that he cannot be a Creator, Ruler or Regulator of a world which is uncreated and eternal. Creation implies desire on the part of the God who wants to create; desire implies imperfection. A. B. Latthe has quoted the reasoning of an Ācārya on this point: “If God created the universe, where was he before creating it? If he was not in space, where did he localise the universe? How could a formless or immaterial substance like God create the world of matter? If the material is to be taken as existing, why not take the world itself as unbegun? If the creator was uncreated, why not suppose the world to be itself-existing? .... Is God self-sufficient? If he is, he need not have created the world. If he is not, like an ordinary potter, he would be incapable of the task, since, by hypothesis, only a perfect being could produce it. If God created the world as a mere play of his will, it would be making God childish. If God is benevolent and has created the world out of his grace, he would not have brought into existence misery as well as felicity.”6

In brief, the Jainas do not accept the view of the Naiyāyika that the world is created by an intelligent agent who is God; nor do they accept that he is omnipresent because if he exists everywhere, he will absorb everything within himself, without leaving anything to exist outside him. They do not regard God as necessary to explain the universe. Each individual soul is divine in its nature and can attain perfection. The concept of God in Jaina philosophy is the divinity in man. Man can realise the same by cultivation of steady faith, right
perception, perfect knowledge and a spotless character. Man has absolute independence and nothing can intervene between his actions and their fruits. Such Philosophy does not appeal to the weak minds. Men and women in difficulties look up to some divine power which could aid them in their difficulties and relieve them of their sufferings. They pray for favours and gifts, forgetting that they are the makers of their own destinies and that their joys and sorrows are of their own making. Perhaps to bring solace to such minds, the cult of Yakṣas and Yakṣinīs seems to have taken birth at some later stage. According to Hiralal Jain, the Jainas accorded a place in their temples to the Yakṣas, Nāgas and other gods and goddesses by picturing them as guardians of the Tīrthankaras out of respect for the sentiments of the non-Āryans who used to erect temples for them. Once the Yakṣa cult was prevalent in India and so also of the Yakṣinī, in different forms. They were Kuladevatās. When groups of people adopted the Jaina way of life, they brought these Kuladevatās with them and the Jaina Ācāryas gave them a secondary place in the Jaina pantheon and used them for ritualistic purposes.

The Jaina Purāṇas do refer to the Yakṣas and Yakṣinīs. Dharaṇendra and Padmāvatī have been associated with Tīrthankara Pārśvanātha whom they are said to have protected from the cruel attacks of his enemy to disturb him during his meditations. They are worshipped by holding out promise of offers of things if their desires are fulfilled. The forms of worship with tāntric and māntric rituals are foreign to Jaina philosophy. However, the worship of these gods and goddesses must have been thought of to wean away ordinary men and women from the influences of Hinduism which holds out the hope of fulfilment of one’s own desires by a number of gods and goddesses. T. G. Kalghatigi says “The cult of Jvālāmālinī with its tāntric accompaniments may be mentioned as another example of this form of worship. The promulgator of this cult was perhaps, Helācārya of Ponnur. According to the prevailing
belief at that time, mastery over spells or Mantravidyā was considered as a qualification for superiority. The Jain Ācāryas claimed to be master Mantravādins. Jainism had to compete with other Hindu creeds. Yaksī form of worship must have been introduced in order to attract the common men towards Jainism, by appealing to the popular forms of worship.”

According to Jain metaphysics, one of the four states of existence is the Deva-gati in which a soul may assume on account of its good Karmas the Deva-gati living in heaven like the Bhavanavāsi, Vyantaravāsi, Jyotiṣka and Kalpavāsi. These gods are subject to birth and rebirth and are unable to grant any favours to other beings. They are a stage higher than men but they must be reborn as men if they have to attain complete liberation from the cycle of births and deaths. Their abode is fixed as the celestial region where they live enjoying the fruits of their purya or meritorious deeds till the purya is exhausted. They have ranks amongst them either based on status or duration of life.

The Jainas recognise divinity in man, and godhood means the attainment of purity and perfection inherent in every soul. Tirthankaras are among those who have attained omniscience and perfection.

The Concept of Worship.

Why do the Jainas worship the Tirthankaras? They worship them because they are liberated souls who have attained perfection and omniscience. They were mortals; they looked to no higher beings but looked within themselves. They are the prophets who held aloft the light of Jain religion and culture. They preached the eternal truths of life, followed them and helped millions of other men to cross the hurdles of Samsāra. They realised the divinity of their soul. In worshipping Tirthankaras, a Jaina worships the ideals followed and preached during their journey to self-realization. He seeks no
favours because a Tirthankara can grant none. There is nothing like divine grace unless one cultivates divinity by elevating one's own soul.

Umasvami has expressed the object of worship in precise terms in the opening verse of his renowned scripture known as the Tattvartha-Sutra which is an aphoristic exposition of the principles of reality.

“Mokṣamārgasya netāram bhettāram karmabhūptām
Inātāram viśvatattvānāṁ vande taddaŋgalaḥbhaye.”

I bow to the Lord who is the leader of the path of liberation, the destroyer of the mountains of karmas and the knower of the whole of reality, so that I may realise those qualities.”

The object of this worship therefore is not to seek favours but to cultivate a frame of mind which will develop in oneself all that is best in the master. The devotee is in the position of a disciple who approaches his Master in his lonely hut seeking for new light and guidance to attain liberation. Pujyapada has given an example in his exposition of the above verse: “Some wise person who is desirous of obtaining what is good for him and who is capable of attaining liberation in a short time, approaches a lonely and delightful hermitage capable of affording peace of mind to the potential souls. There he sees the preceptor, seated in the midst of the congregation of monks as the embodiment of the path to liberation as it were indicating the path by his very form even without uttering words. He comes before the great passionless saint, skilled in reasoning and in the scriptures, who is worthy of veneration by noble persons and whose chief task is to preach what is good to all living beings. The disciple asks him with reverence ‘O, Master, what is good for the soul? The saint says: ‘Liberation’. He again asks the saint, ‘What is the nature of liberation, and what is the way to attain it?’ The saint answers ‘Liberation is the attainment of an altogether different state of soul, on the removal of all the impurities of Karmic matter and the body, characterised by the
inherent qualities of the soul such as knowledge and bliss, free from pain and suffering.  

Seeking guidance by reminding ourselves of what has been preached by the Tirthankaras and what is said in the scriptures is the object of worship. This is possible only by purification of the mind and thoughts so that the moments of worships are really the moments of meditation on the real nature of the Self.

All religions prescribe a form of daily prayer. The contents of the prayer are indicative of the psychological approach of the devotee. The full prayer is as follows:

"Om namo Arjhanam, namo Siddhanam,
namo Ayarnam, namo Uvajhyam,
namo loe savasahnam."

"Obeisance to the Arhat, 
obeisance to the Siddhas, 
obeisance to the Acaryas, 
obeisance to the Upadhyayas and 
obeisance to all the Sadhus in the universe."

This mantra is called the Panaanamakar mantra as it is a prayer of the Pancaparameshthis, that is, the five Supreme Beings who are to be revered by our respectful salutation. There is nothing sectarian about it. It concentrates itself on the merits and qualities rather than on any particular god or teacher.

The qualities and ideals which each of the five Supreme Beings represent are explained by Nemichandra in verses 50 to 54 of his book 'Dravya-Samagraha' (A Compendium of Dravyas).  

While dealing with the concept of God above, I have already dealt with the qualities of an Arhat. He is a pure soul in an auspicious body, (Subha-dehasha), possessed of infinite faith, happiness, knowledge and power, which has
destroyed the four destructive karmas. From a realistic point of view, an Arhat is without a body; but from the popular point of view, we speak of him as possessed of a lustrous body.

When we meditate upon the Siddha, we meditate upon the soul which is without a body produced by eight kinds of karmas; he is the seer and knower of Loka and A lokas and he stays at the summit of the Universe. The Siddha is without a body and cannot therefore be perceived by the senses. His shadowy shape resembles a human figure. The summit of Lokākāśa where he stays is called Siddha-silā. According to Jainism, a Siddha has knowledge of everything in the Lokākāśa and Alokākāśa which existed in the past, exists in the present and will exist in the future. These Siddhas have to be distinguished from the ordinary Sādhus who are supposed to possess some miraculous powers.

The Ācārya who is to be meditated upon is one who practises five kinds of conduct. The five Ācāras are Darśanācāra, Jñānācāra, Cāitrācāra, Tapācāra and Viryācāra. Darśanācāra consists in cultivating faith in the soul which consists of Supreme Consciousness and is the only thing to be meditated upon as it is separate from the body. Jñānācāra consists in developing knowledge that the soul is pure and perfect, and that it has nothing to do with attachment, delusion, or aversion. Cāitrācāra consists in moulding one's own conduct by freeing it from all kinds of attachments and other disturbing factors so that the mind can have the necessary calm and tranquility for peaceful contemplation on the nature of soul. Tapācāra is practising various kinds of penances and austerities so as to enable the soul to attain its true nature. Viryācāra consists in the development of one’s own power or inherent strength of all the mental faculties so that the soul feels no hindrance in self-realization. An Ācārya who preaches and practises these qaulities is worthy of respect and veneration.

Upādhyāya or a teacher is one who is possessed of the three Jewels and is ever engaged in preaching the tenets of religion.
He is accorded a high place of honour because it is he who inspires the people by his preachings to religious pursuits and practices.

A Sādhu is one who walks into the path of liberation with perfect faith and knowledge and with all purity of thought and conduct. He practises penances and engages in activities which are conducive to attainment of liberation.

These are five supreme beings who are to be praised and revered everyday. They are possessed of qualities which, when contemplated upon, are sure to conduce to peace of mind to moulding of conduct and lead to clear perception and real knowledge of the true nature of the soul. The first stage of meditation is attainment of steadiness in conduct while the second stage is reached when concentration in the contemplation of the soul is reached. The mind is freed from attachment to or desire for acquisition of worldly possessions. Mental weaknesses like delusion, aversion, anger, hatred, pride, greed etc. are overcome so as to acquire complete equanimity of mind. This is the first stage of preparation for meditation. Then one should turn all his faculties inward with complete restraint of mind, thought and action in relation to external objects, and meditate on the nature of the soul. This is what is called Dhyāna. It is essential that the person who wishes to practise meditation should prepare the preliminary ground by acquisition of knowledge of scriptures, observance of the various vows and practice of penance.

This is the real conception of Jaina prayer and worship. It is impossible to know fully well the qualities of the Five Supreme Beings or the Panca-Paramesṭhis without regular study of the scriptures. Knowledge of the scriptures strengthens our faith in religion and creates an awareness of the inherent potentialities of the soul.

The special features of Jaina worship and prayer have been briefly noted by J. L. Jaini: "Four points must be noticed:
(1) the catholicity of the Jaina attitude. The worship and reverence are given to all human souls worthy of it, in whatever clime or country they may be. The worship is impersonal.
(2) It is the aggregate of the qualities that is worshipped rather than any particular individual. (3) The Arhat, the living embodiment of the highest goal of Jainism, is named before the free soul who has left the world and cannot be approached by humanity which requires to see the truth before it can seek it. (4) The Jaina incantation aum or Om is composed of five sounds: a, a, ā, u and m which stand respectively for arhat, asarihā (“disembodied,” i.e., the Siddha); ācārya; upādyāya and muni—the silent or the sādhu. The prayer and worship are media through which we not only exhibit our ideal but also develop devotion which raises us to a state of ecstasy making us supremely happy in the realization of ourselves.

One thing that must be added in conclusion is that inspite of the idealistic concept of God, Jaina saints and poets have taught their followers to be tolerant of other religions. Their doctrine of Anekāntavāda is perhaps responsible for their cosmopolitan outlook as it enables him to appreciate the other’s point of view. Here is a verse from the pen of a Jaina saint which says, in effect, that it is immaterial by what name you call your god as all gods possess the common qualities of purity, compassion, and divinity.

विष्णुवर्ष नित्रुतको भवतु वा ब्रह्मा सुरेंद्रोधवा
भानुवर्ष शाशिलांकनोद्व संगवान् बुद्धोद्व सिद्धोधवा
रागदेशविषादंदीपरहितं सत्वानुपकथ्यतो या रवे:
सह संस्कृतो गुणगणस्तथम नम सवदा

"Viṣṇurva Tripurāntakā Bhavatvā vā Brahmadevā Surendrotvā, Bhānuvā Śasilaṁkanotho Bhagavān Buddhatho Siddhathavā Rāgadvesvāvātī doṣaratāḥ satvānukampodyata, yah sarvaih saha samśkrto guṇaganaistasmāi namah sarvadā." “Let me
always salute him who is free from blemishes of anger, hatred etc., which haunt the mind like poison, who is full of compassion and who has perfected himself by all virtues, whether he is called by the name of Viṣṇu, Śiva, Brahma, Devendra, Sun, Moon, Bhagavān or Buddha."

Let me quote the following passage from J. L. Jaini who summarises the concept of God in Jainism in simple but forceful words: "Jainism, more than any other creed, gives absolute religious independence and freedom to man. Nothing can intervene between the actions which we do and the fruits thereof. Once done, they become our masters and must fructify. As my independence is great, so my responsibility is co-extensive with it. I can live as I like; but my voice is irrevocable, and I cannot escape the consequences of it. This principle distinguishes Jainism from other religions, e.g. Christianity, Muhammadanism, Hinduism. No God, or His prophet or deputy, or beloved, can interfere with human life. The soul, and it alone is responsible for all that it does.”

In conclusion, Jainism does not accept the existence of a personal God who is at once the creator and protector. The real God is the soul which has attained perfection. Infinite perception, knowledge, power and Bliss which are the attributes of perfection are inherent in every soul. In the material world those attributes are hidden by the veils of the Karmas. The Tirthankaras who are the ideals of perfection have shown the way of liberation. He who follows the requisites of Right knowledge and Right conduct can attain divinity by the fullest realization of the powers which lie dormant in him.
Bibliography and References

   Edinburgh, T & T Clark, 38 George Street, New York.


   Advaita Ashram, 3 Delhi Entally Road, Calcutta-14.


   Central Jaina Publishing House, Arrah (India).


   Jaina Samskriti Samrakshaka Sangha, Sholapur.

   Vira Sasana Sangha, 29 Indra Visvas Road, Calcutta 37.


CHAPTER V

THE UNIVERSE

There have been numerous speculations about the birth or creation of the universe. How did the universe originate? What is the foundation on which it stands? Some sage said that it was standing on the hood of Nāgaśeṣa. Hinduism seems to propound more than one theory about the act of creation. The Sānkhya school of thought postulates that the universe is evolved through the interaction of Prakṛti (primeval matter) and Puruṣa (individual consciousness or intelligence). The Vedānta school maintains that every thing in the universe, souls and matter alike, was produced from God's own essence. The motive for creation is explained by the Vedānta school as the līlā or sport of the Brahman. In fact, Hinduism evolved a holy trinity in regard to the creation, viz., Brahmapurusha the creator, Visnu the preserver and Śiva the destroyer. "The aim of the universe for the Upanisad" says Dr. S. Radhakrishnan, "is to produce beings in whom mind (manas) and intellect (vijñāna) shall lead to spiritual excellence (ānanda)."¹

The Buddha discouraged all speculation on the origin and the end of the universe. He regarded the universe as transient and in continuous flux. There is nothing that is permanent and all idea of permanence is part of basic ignorance.² He discouraged metaphysical speculations as futile exercises. He used to tell his disciples to rely upon reason to find out the truth and not on the word of any elder.
The Christians hold the view that the universe is God's creation. This finds free expression in their simple prayer: "O Lord, thou that did'st make the heaven and the earth and the sea and all that is in there." To Jesus, God was "Lord of heaven and earth" and also "one who maketh his sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sendeth rain on the just and the unjust". It is his Heavenly Father that feeds the birds and clothes the fields with grass. "In Him" says St. Paul," we live and move, and have our being." So according to the Christian view, God is the Creator of the universe and of everything that is found on it.

The Muslim account of creation of the Universe as found in the Quran seems to have been founded upon the story in the Genesis. God or Allah is believed to have created the earth in two days, placed the mountains which tower above it; he blessed and distributed the nourishment in four days for the cravings of all alike; he completed the creation of the heavens in two days.

Jaina Cosmology regards the universe as comprising six substances which are technically called dravyas. It is real and consists of Jiva (soul) and Ajīva (non-soul). The world is dynamic and not static. It is ever changing, subject to modifications or decay. The principles underlying the concept are real and scientific. The theories in physics have been undergoing changes since the days of Newton. The thinking in that field has undergone such remarkable changes that an average thinker feels baffled by intricacies of the theory of relativity. That theory has revolutionized the fundamental concepts of mass, time and space. It has provided a new key for perception of the mysteries of the universe.

While the Jaina Ācāryas have divided the substances into broad categories of Jiva and Ajīva, or living and non-living, they have further divided Ajīva into five categories: pudgala, dharma, adharma, ākāśa, kāla.
The soul is a reality. Its chief characteristic is consciousness. It possesses the quality of Upayoga which is made up of the qualities of Jñāna and Darśana, that is, knowledge and perception. The Jīva is the agent of all actions and occupies the size of the body which is the result of its karmas from the smallest to the biggest. Since a body grows from a microscopical size in the mother’s womb to its full proportions when it comes out of it and contracts again at the end of its earthly career, to reincarnate into a new seed, it follows that the size of the soul cannot remain fixed. Modern science identifies life with protoplasm or a living cell. It is well known that protoplasm possesses a remarkable property of contraction under external stimuli. The soul experiences pleasure, pain, life and death through the agency of Karmic matter.  

Pudgala, which word is peculiar to the Jaina philosophy, means matter and energy. Pudgala has form and rūpa or shape and the qualities of touch, taste, smell and colour. The substance of Pudgala has its modifications and they are sound, union, fineness, grossness, shape, division, darkness, image, lustre and heat. The word Pudgala is comprehensive to include all kinds of matter: solids, liquids, gases, energy and fine Karmic matter etc. Einstein has proved that energy has mass but no form. The Jaina thinkers regarded energy as matter and divided matter into skandhas, ānus and paramānus which correspond to molecules, atom and electron respectively. The union of electrons and positrons to form different kinds of matter is attributed to the differences in the degrees of snigdha (viscous) and rūkṣa (dry) properties of the particles.

There is an infinite number of souls which fill the universe. Such souls are either mundane (samsārin) or liberated (mukta). The mundane souls include all beings living in the world; they are entangled with matter of subtle Karmas. The living beings are divided according to the number of senses they possess. The five senses are: touch, taste, smell, sight and hearing. Beings possessing only one organ of touch are plants. Examples of
beings possessing more organs in their order as two, three etc.
are: worms, ants, bees. The vertebrates possess all five organs
of sense; they are again divided into samanaska (or with a mind)
and amanaska (or without a mind). The former are rational
while the lower animals without a mind are irrational. Amongst
the rational, there are men, denizens of hell and the gods.
Besides, the four elements viz. earth, water, air and fire are
animated by souls, that is, their bodies are formed by the
particles of earth, water, air or fire as the case may be. These
are elementary lives which are either subtle or gross, the subtle
ones being invisible. Even amongst plants, there are subtle
ones. The subtle or invisible "plants are called nigodas; they
are composed of an infinite number of souls forming a very
small cluster, having respiration and nutrition in common, and
experience the most exquisite pains. Innumerable nigodas form
a globule, and with them the whole space of the world is closely
packed like a box filled with powder. The nigodas furnish the
supply of souls in place of those who have reached nirvāṇa,
But an infinitesimally small fraction of one single nigoda suffices
to replace the vacancy caused in the world by the nirvāṇa
of all souls that have been liberated from the beginningless past
down to the present. Thus it is evident that the saṃsāra
will never be empty of living beings. The number of such
souls being infinite, there is no question of their stock being
exhausted even if infinite souls are liberated. It may be
mentioned that the liberated souls, that is, souls who have
attained perfection, dwell at the top of the universe in a state
of absolute purity.

Dharma is a substance which assists the movement of
moving pudgala. This is the medium of motion. Adharama which
is its counterpart assists the staying of pudgalas and jīvas which
are stationary, as shadow assists the staying of a traveller.
This is medium of rest. Both these are non-material, non-
atomic and continuous media pervading Lokākāśa, every iota
of the whole universe, although for purposes of practical
convenience they are regarded as made up of space-points.
They however possess the characteristics of Reality viz. they undergo a cycle of changes, old forms gradually disappearing, new forms appearing and at the end of the cycle the original pattern is again there.

"Both Dharma and Adharma pervade through space upto world limit. They are absolutely non-physical in nature, and non-atomic and non-discrete in structure. The qualities of pudgala are not found therein. Nor do they have the structure of the space which is constituted by space points. These two physical principles are perfectly simple. They are spatial and yet non-spatial. They are amūrta and arūpa. They are neither light nor heavy. They are not objects of sense perception. Their existence is inferred only through their function. Such are the characteristics of these two principles which are distinctly peculiar to Jaina Physics".  

Dharma and adharama are not active forces but they are merely passive media. G. R. Jain observes that the modern analogue of the medium of motion is the ether and that even to this day the problem of ether remains a puzzle. According to him, the modern scientific equivalent of the 'medium of rest' is the field through which the forces which maintain the cosmic unity operate. Without this medium there would be no coherent system of souls and atoms, there would be only chaos—no world would be possible. The field is similar to ether in so much as it is also a non-material, invisible, non-atomic, continuous and passive medium but its function is quite opposite. These two media interpenetrate in every bit of universe and do not interfere with the function of each other. He concludes: "It is worthy of notice that although all Indian philosophies have devoted very great pains to the theories of world evolution, none of them but the Jains could think of these vital principles of motion and rest without which a stable world structure is impossible and incomplete".

As the Jainas never accepted any God as an intelligent creator, they have worked out their concept of this world in a consistent manner.
According to Jaina thinkers, akāśa could be pure space as well as it could allow space to every other substance. It has no form and all objects of the universe exist in it. It is eternal and pervasive. It is a subtle substance and does not obstruct other substances. Akāśa is of two kinds; Lokākāśa and Alokākāśa. According to the Jaina Metaphysics, Loka is universes; it has three divisions viz. Īrdhva loka or the upper world, madhya loka or the middle world and adho loka or the lower world. The first one is the abode of celestial beings, the second one is of human beings and others, and the third one is the hell which is for the inmates of hell. Surrounding these Lokas which are situated one above the other are three layers of air, the inner one humid, the middle dense and outer rarified. Within the envelope of these layers, there is the Lokākāśa—an invisible substance which allows space to other substances and is equal in extent to the Lokas. It is in the Lokākāśa that the other substances, Jīva, Pudgala, Dharma, Adharma and Kāla exist.

Alokākāśa is pure space extending over to infinity beyond Lokākāśa. There are no animate or inanimate objects in it. The dynamic and static principles of dharma and adharma are not there. It is eternal, infinite, formless and perceptible only to the omniscient.

The sixth substance which comprises the universe is time (Kāla). From the popular point of view, kāla assists production of changes in substances and can be understood from the changes that have come about in the substances. Kāla itself does not cause the changes but indirectly aids in the production of changes. From the popular point of view kāla or time consists of years, months, days, hours, minutes etc., by which we call a thing to be new or old as a result of the changes noticed in them. Kāla is eternal and infinite. It is formless. Inference of existence of real time can be drawn from the changes that a substance might have undergone, as for example, the changes that might have taken place in raw rice from the time it is put
into a pot till it has boiled. The universe is full of minute points of time. They are invisible, innumerable, inactive and formless. The points or particles exist separately.

Of the six substances, each of them except Kāla is called astikāya. ‘Asti’ means ‘to exist’ and ‘kāya’ means ‘body’, that is, each having many pradeśas. Pradeśa is defined as that portion of the ākāśa which is occupied by one indivisible ultimate atom of matter. It is possible that in each pradeśa of Lokākāśa, innumerable atoms or molecules may exist as it is the characteristic of space to provide space to them all. Time exists by itself and assists things in their movements of continuity. The great French philosopher Bergson declared that time is a patent factor in the evolution of the Cosmos. He is of the opinion that changes and modifications are absolutely impossible without time element. This is also the view of Jain writers.  

From the point of existence of the universe, time is divided into two cycles (1) the utsarpīṇī kāla or the ascending cycle which is characterised by progress and development of knowledge, age, happiness etc. (2) the avasarpīṇī kāla or the descending cycle of time which is characterised by decline and deterioration in knowledge, age, etc. Each of these cycles has six divisions. The ascending cycle begins with duḥṣamā-duḥṣamā (most miserable), duḥṣamā (miserable), duḥṣamā-suṣamā (misery mixed with happiness), suṣamā-duḥṣamā (happiness mixed with misery), suṣamā (happy), suṣamā-suṣamā (most happy). The avasarpīṇī-kāla begins in the reverse order, commencing from the most happy period. This connotes that the substances which are eternal and indestructible, change their conditions in the two cycles of time. The division of time does not apply to the whole universe, but only to Ārya-khaṇḍa of Bhārata and Airāvata ksetras (regions).  

The form of the universe (loka) is like a man standing akimbo, that is, with his legs wide a part and his hands on his hips. In a side view, the universe is like one and half mrdaṅga
(longish drums) put together, i. e., the half being placed below and with its sounding side upwards next to the lower sounding side of the full drum. It is not hollow but is solid, as if stuffed full of flags, in the curious language of the Tritokasāra.\(^{11}\)

The dimensions of the universe are in terms of rājju which it is difficult to describe. The height of the universe is 14 rājju. Its breadth east to west is 7 rājju at bottom; the breadth in the middle is one rājju, 5 rājju at the upper middle and again one rājju at the top. Its thickness north to south is 7 rājju all through.

At the extreme summit of the universe is situated the Siddha kṣetra, also called the Siddha-Silā which is the abode of the liberated souls. Its form is like that of a canopy of umbrella, a cupola or an inverted cup. It is 8 Yojanās in the middle. It is self-luminous. In it all pure souls abide in eternal bliss. Being freed from the Karmas, the souls move upwards to the limit of the universe. The principle of motion comes to an end and therefore the liberated souls rest there forever. They stay there in their pure soulness, in their true and eternal, omniscient and omnipotent Godhood. The Siddha-Silā is the buffer space between the loka (universe) and aloka (non-universe).

The aloka is devoid of the six substances which are present in the loka. In one word, the non-universe is the negation of the universe both in its constitution and character.\(^{12}\)

The Jaina astronomers held that the earth is at rest and that the sun moves round. This was also the view of Ptolemy. Copernicus advanced the contrary theory according to which the earth moves and the sun is at rest. Before the advent of Prof. Einstein's theory of Relativity, the Ptolemaic view was regarded as absurd and absolutely foolish. Now it has been proclaimed that the conception of motion of the earth round the sun is only a matter of convenience, rather a matter of mathematical convenience.\(^{13}\) G. R. Jain has quoted Dr. Schubring of the
Hamburg University from his lecture delivered at Delhi on Jan. 30, 1928: "He who has a thorough knowledge of the structure of the world cannot but admire the inward logic and harmony of Jaina ideas. Hand in hand with the refined cosmographical ideas goes a high standard of astronomy and mathematics". A history of Indian astronomy is not conceivable without the famous "Sūrya Prajñāpīti".14

Isaac Asimov, while dealing with the general shape of the earth, has observed: "All men, before the time of the Greeks, made the assumption that the earth was flat, as indeed it appears to be, barring the irregularities of the mountains and valleys. If any Greek thought otherwise, his name has not come down to us and the record of his thinking has not survived. He seems to think that the assumption of a flat, however much it might seem to be commonsensical, involved one in philosophic difficulties of the most serious sort."15

Scientific investigations are changing our knowledge and man may never succeed in comprehending fully the reality of nature. New theories are being propounded now and then and nobody knows when the great questions of metaphysics would be solved finally.

In brief, it would be found that Jainism has a positive view of the Universe. It recognises life and the five substances categorised under Ājīva are real and existing. Every substance maintains its reality, though it is capable of modifications and decay. The substance persists to exist inspite of change. Umāsvāmi has indicated in unmistakable terms that although the six substances possess the common substances of sat, sat is characterised by utpāda (birth), vyaya (going out of existence) and dhrauvya (permanence). Permanence means indestructibility of the substance. Though Jacobi first criticised the Jaina tenets as having no central idea, he later revised his view. "... I have now learned to look at Jaina philosophy in a different light. It has, I think, a metaphysical basis of its own, which secured
it a distinct position apart from the rival systems both of the Brahmans and of the Buddhists." The fact that even a scholar like Jacobi was initially critical of Jaina metaphysics and later appreciated the integrated pattern of Jaina thought as a whole assures us that an open-minded approach to the Jaina system is bound to result in a proper understanding of Jaina metaphysics.
Bibliography and References


12. *Ibid.* *PP. 8-10*


15. Isaac Asimov: *The Universe,* *PP. 2, 4.*


Chapter VI

Jiva or the Theory of SUL

In metaphysics, man through different ages and stages of philosophy has observed the self and the non-self, and has always tried to apotheosize one or the other, or to strike a sort of compromise between the two. He has formulated either one substance, like the Brahman of the Vedántin or the matter of the materialist or else many substances, like the Sāṅkhya, or else two substances. Jainism takes its stand upon a common-sense basis, which can be verified by everyone for himself.¹

As we have already seen, the Jaina thinkers divide the universe into two independent categories, the soul (jīva) and the non-soul (ajīva or non-jīva); these two substances are everlasting, uncreated and co-existing. This division is logical, perfect and unassailable.²

The song of every religion has been: "Know thyself." So the central subject of every philosophy which preaches self-realization as the goal of life is the "Self" or "Spirit" as it has been called by some. All Hindu philosophers admit the existence of the soul, but conceive it in different ways: some think that it is a substance, which is not itself consciousness, but which can become the substratum of cognition, activity and experience (Naiyāyikas and Prābhākara Māmāsakas); others, that it is the principle of self-consciousness itself (Sāmkhyas, Bhāṭṭa Māmāsakas and Advaita Vedāntins). Some consider it to be in
its essential nature free from all suffering and sin, while others think that it is of the nature of bliss, and holy. All of them are agreed on the following points. The soul is neither the body nor the mind nor the senses. All these latter are material. The soul is eternal. It is as such, free from suffering and sin; but due to inhabitation in the body and association with the mind and senses, it thinks, acts and experiences. The soul's involvement in the process of births and deaths is beginningless, but can have an end when it attains salvation. All souls are essentially the same in nature but the difference is due to the process of Karman. The most exalted order is the attainment of Brahmatman by the Atman. One of the oft quoted statements is: One without a Second.

This theory of the identity of the divine and human spirit is the root of the Vedânta philosophy which has found expression in the early Upanisads.

Śaṅkarācārya propounded that Brahman is the ultimate Reality. The Universe is built upon the doctrine of vivarta or appearance of the Real as something which it is not. Brahman is the sole Reality in the Universe. This is the Advaita school of thought. The Śaṅkhya school however posits the existence of two principles i.e. prakṛti (matter) and puruṣa (consciousness). These are two independent aspects of reality. Puruṣa is only consciousness and nothing more. It recognises an infinite number of spirits. It is from prakṛti that all visible things of the world emanate, as also the subtle substances like buddhi (intellect) ahamkāra (egoism) and manas (mind). The ultimate constituents of prakṛti are sattva, rajas and tamas; and the changes that take place are attributable to the different types of their combinations. The Viśiṣṭadvaita propounds non-dualism. According to it, the Brahman or the reality is not non-dual but a complex whole which incorporates within itself unity as well as diversity. In contrast to Śaṅkara's view of absolute identity in which difference gets obliterated, in Rāmānuja's system, difference is not set aside as a mere construction of the mind, and therefore as illusory, but as being
integrated with an abiding entity. The complex whole is constituted of the ultimate triad, acit, cit and Isvara, respectively standing for the principles of material objects, the principles of individual spirits and God. The relationship between God on the one hand and cit and acit on the other is analogous to that between substance and its attributes. The Absolute is thus a complex which consists of one cosmic and its dependents, the world and the individual selves. The Vaiśeṣika school recognises the multiplicity of souls as also the reality of the world. Feeling, willing and thought are recognised as the functions of the soul.

These differences are not of much practical import except in so far as they modify the conception of the state of the soul after liberation.

The Jaina philosophers have considered the characteristics of Jīva from two points of view—(1) the Vyāvahāra Nāya; (2) the Niścaya Nāya. Vyāvahāra Nāya is the common or popular point of view. It is the ordinary common-sense view in which a man speaks of objects which he sees or are known to him. It is the point of view which people take in the normal course (vyāvahāra janoditam). Niścaya Nāya means the realistic point of view. It is marked by accuracy in expression and precise in description. The description is of the realities which are overlooked in popular talk or account. For example, when we speak of an inkpot, we must say, if the pot is made of metal, glass or clay and we must say whether the ink is red, blue or black.

In this world, we do not meet with Jīva or pure life as such. Jīva or the living substance is found mixed with non-living substance. In common parlance, Jīva is translated as soul or living being. An average individual, due to ignorance, regards his body as his soul and bestows all thought and attention to keep his body in comfort. The root cause of our suffering lies in our ignorance of its essential characteristics.
According to Jain philosophy, Jīva is uncreated and indestructible. As already noticed, Jīva and Ājīva are the two substances which comprise the universe. The primary characteristic of Jīva is consciousness which is the hall-mark and centre of life. Attentiveness is its inherent feature, as without it, it cannot have conation. It is the prerequisite of any kind of knowledge. From the popular point of view, Jīva is possessed of four prānas: bala or power, indriya or the senses, āyu or life and ana-prāṇa or respiration. It possesses them in future. The Indriyas or senses are five viz. sight, hearing, touch, taste and smell. Bala or power is of three kinds viz. the power of the body (action), of speech and mind. From the popular point of view, these vitalities mark out the living beings. Speaking from the realistic point of view, all these are the manifestations of consciousness.

Consciousness which is technically called Upayoga functions or manifests in two ways: Darśana (perception) and Jñāna (knowledge). The difference between Darśana and Jñāna is that in former, all the details of an object are not perceived while in the latter all details are known. The distinction between the two terms which are of frequent occurrence in Jain philosophy must be clearly understood. Darśana is an indeterminate stage in the process of getting knowledge. The sense-object contact which initiates the process of knowledge first stirs the consciousness and in this stage there is a mere awareness of the presence of the object. As such, there is only an indefinite and indistinct idea about the object in question. The details about the object are not perceived and naturally there is no question of identifying the object as belonging to a particular class or group. The process of analysis which is inherent in the human mind enables the conversion of mere sense awareness into sense-perception. The vague consciousness of the object presented to the senses is replaced by a definite comprehension of the class characteristics of it. The distinction of the object is grasped and this paves the way for a further expansion of the domain of knowledge.
There is a difference of view on this point. According to Hemacandra, apprehension (darśana) is the cognisance of an object which does not take place immediately after the sense-object contact. Apprehension, according to him, is the stuff which is transformed into comprehension (jnāna). It is an established fact that nothing is produced which was absolutely non-existent and nothing existent is totally destroyed. Thus, apprehension itself undergoes transformation into the subsequent state, i.e., comprehension. Darśana is more or less the first stage of knowledge; it may be without details or may consists of only an indefinite cognition. Jnāna or knowledge consists in the cognition of the details.

Darśana is of four kinds: Caksu, Acaksu, avadhi and kevala. This means that there are four kinds of apprehension: Visual apprehension, non-visual apprehension, psychic apprehension or clairvoyance and perfect apprehension. Apprehension with the aid of eyes is Caksu Darśana. Acaksu Darśana is apprehension derived with the aid of the mind, ear, nose, tongue or the skin. All these are the means of apprehension without the aid of eyes and hence such Daśrana is called Acaksu Daśrana. Avadhi Darśana is apprehension derived through the soul directly. Modern psychical researches have shown that there could be cognition without the aid of senses and the mind. Such phenomena as clairvoyance, telepathy, clairaudience and the like have been recorded to prove the validity of occurrence of extra-sense perceptions. Those who are endowed with this power grasp the secret thoughts of other individuals without using their sense-organs. They also perceive events more or less remote in space and time. Most of the modern psychologists like McDaugal, H. H. Price and others have recognised that there is ample evidence to bear out the validity of the ancient belief in telepathy and clairvoyance as a great faculty of cognition in human beings through which information not possible for the senses to acquire, can be received. In Kevala Daśrana or perfect apprehension, there is cognition of everything in the three worlds existent in the present, the past and the future.
Jñāna is of eight kinds: (1) Mati jñāna, (2) Śruta jñāna, (3) Avadhi jñāna, (4) Manuḥ-paryāya jñāna, (5) Kevala jñāna, (6) Kumati or Ajñāna of Mati, (7) Kuśruta or Ajñāna of Śruta and (8) Vibhaṅgāvadhi or Ajñāna of Avadhi. The last three are false knowledge of the first three. It may be noted that while Nemicandra mentions Jñāna after Darśana in his Dravyasamgraha, Umāsvāmi has mentioned Jñāna first and Darśana next in his Tattvārtha-sūtra. The explanation offered by Pujyapāda in his commentary on Tattvārtha-sūtra is that knowledge is worthier than apprehension.

Mati jñāna is knowledge derived through the senses: it also includes knowledge that arises through the activity of the mind. Śruta jñāna is knowledge derived from the scriptures, either by reading them or hearing when they are read. It may be termed as verbal knowledge as distinguished from Mati-jñāna which is non-verbal. Bhadraḥāhu enumerates eight qualities of intellect which are necessary for scriptural knowledge. They are: desire for hearing, repeated questioning, attentive hearing, grasping, enquiry, conviction, retention and right action. Learning consists in competency to understand what is written. The distinction between the two consists in that in Mati-jñāna there is no external aid of a language or symbol while in the Śruta-jñāna, knowledge derived from the scriptures, does not stop with what is read or heard but develops into thought and action according to the competency of the person concerned.

The third kind of knowledge is Avadhi jñāna which is clairvoyance. It is directly acquired by the soul without the aid of the senses or the mind. Knowledge in the hypnotic state may be cited as an example of Avadhi-jñāna. According to Jaina philosophy, the soul in its perfect purity has the inherent capacity to know all things, without reference to space or time. It is knowledge of things which have shape or form and is derived by intuition. Intuitions differ in scope and durability with different persons due to differ in their merits. One endowed with the highest type of Avadhi can intuit all things having form.
In point of space, his intuition extends over a space that could be occupied by a countless number of space-units. As regards time, it penetrates countless number of cycles, both past and future. As regards modes, it can know an infinite number of them (things).\textsuperscript{12}

Manah-paryāya jñāna is knowledge of the thoughts of others. It is called telepathy. It is limited to the abode of human beings, is due to merit and is possessed by one having character (that is, a person who is a homeless ascetic).\textsuperscript{13} Pujyapāda Devanandī defines it: "Due to its association with the manas (mind), the object of the manas (mind) of others is called manas and the paryāyah (‘knowledge’ of that object) is manahparyāya. It is not a Manityāna because the mind is only inactive background and does not make any contribution (in such knowledge). It is exclusively due to the potency of destruction-cum-subsidence although it is designed by means of the manas of oneself or of another (on account of the association with it.) The case is on par with the usage in the proposition ‘Behold the moon in the sky’ in which the moon is pointed out by means of the sky."\textsuperscript{14}

Manah-paryāyahjnāna is of two kinds: rjumati and vipulamatī.\textsuperscript{15} The former refers to the thoughts and feelings of others or in one’s own mind while the latter means knowledge of the thoughts and feelings of others whether present now or relating to the past or future time. The state of the soul on the destruction-cum-subsidence of the karmic veil covering telepathy is purity. The excellence of telepathy depends upon the extent of purity and absence from fall. Vipulamatī is purer than rjumati with regard to the object (subject matter), space, time, nature and condition.

The difference between telepathy and clairvoyance is with regard to purity, space, knower and objects.\textsuperscript{16} Telepathy is purer than clairvoyance with regard to all the aforesaid matters. Telepathy arises in the case of ascetics who are possessed of high conduct and who have progressed from the seventh stage of
perfection of vows to the twelfth stage of destroyed delusion. Even among the ascetics, it arises only in those who advance spiritually higher and higher. Clairvoyance can be possessed by Devas, infernal beings, human beings and animals. The difference between the two is based on the distinctions between the possessors.¹⁷

It may be of great interest to mention that even in the West the phenomena of extra-sensory perception like clairvoyance, telepathy, precognition and mediumship have been accepted as facts by psychologists like McDougall. Prof. H. H. Price says that evidence for clairvoyance and telepathy is 'abundant and good'. Dr. Rhine has done good work in extra-sensory perception. He says that extra-sensory perception in the form of clairvoyance and telepathy is an actual and demonstrable occurrence. It is not a sensory phenomenon.¹⁸

Kavala jñāna is omniscience. A soul in its pure and liberated state can comprehend all substances in all forms or modes. Umāsvāmi has stated that omniscience extends to all substances and all their modes simultaneously.¹⁹ Everything comes within the purview of omniscience. The various kinds of jñāna enumerated and discussed so far point out to the fact that this kind of jñāna is progressive development of knowledge. Omniscience is the final point which is reached by knowledge when it is free from all kinds of Karmic veils. The perception of an omniscient self is not produced by the sense organs, and hence it can know supersensory objects. It is not produced in succession but simultaneously and hence it cognises all the objects of the universe at one and the same time since it is beyond the limitations of space and time. The omniscient self is pure and perfect and hence, it cannot be tainted by the imperfections of sensory and mental condition. The past and future are perceived by the omniscient not as present, but as past and future. Hence no question of illusion arises. The omniscient knows the past existing in the past and the future as existing in the future. Because of the complete destruction of the obscuring veils of Karma, the cognition of the omniscient... is derived directly from the self, independently of any media of the external senses and mind.²⁰
False knowledge or perverted knowledge is of three kinds: Ajñāna of Mati, Śrūta and Avadhi. Wrong knowledge is the result of wrong approach, attitude or discrimination. Wrong approach, attitude or discrimination. Wrong knowledge is caused owing to wrong belief. The sense of discrimination is necessary for right knowledge. Want of clarity in thinking is also responsible for wrong knowledge. Owing to wrong beliefs wrong qualities are attributed to things and the expression of views is bound to be more imaginary than real. One or more of these factors are responsible for wrong sensory knowledge, wrong scriptural knowledge and erroneousclairvoyance.

From another point of view, knowledge is divided into two classes: Pratyakṣa (direct) and Parokṣa (indirect). The difference between the two kinds of knowledge is due to the difference between the media through which it is derived. Knowledge derived through the senses and the mind is indirect knowledge. According to Jaina thinkers, mind is anindriya or non-sense. Sense-organs have their seats in the different parts of the body while the mind has no connection with the body. It is an internal organ of cognition and helps the self to comprehend states like pleasure and pain. Accordingly Mati jñāna and Śrūta jñāna fall under the category of indirect knowledge as they are derived through the mediation of the senses and the mind. The other three viz. Avadhi, Manahparyaya and Kevala are direct or immediate knowledge.

Jaina psychology recognises four stages in Mati jñāṇa viz. (1) Avagraha or perception, (2) ihā or speculation, (3) avāya or perceptual judgment, and (4) dhāraṇā or retention. Avagraha creates an awareness and perception of any object. Awareness stirs the consciousness. It is indeterminate and cognises the general features of an object. Ihā or speculation follows general awareness of an object; speculation or further inquiry advances towards a distinct awareness to grasp the distinctive characters. For instance, in sensation we simply hear a sound and do not know its nature. There we get a mere acquaintance of the sound.
In speculation we are able to cognise the nature of the sound to a great extent. Sensation cognises only a part of the object, while speculation cognises the rest and strives for the determination of a specific feature. Speculation is striving for a specific determination of an object that has already been cognised by sensation. The mental state that strives for the ascertainment of the truth on the ground of reason, which tends to accept the true and reject the false, is speculation.\textsuperscript{21} Avāya or perceptual judgement consists in the ascertainment of the right and exclusion of the wrong. It is a determination of the existent qualities and exclusion of the non-existent qualities and exclusion of the non-existent ones. Dhāranā or retention follows the perceptual judgement as it consists in the consolidation of that perception for a certain length of time. It is not by any means the condition recollection. From what has been said about the nature of retention, it is obvious that the Jaina psychology considers memory to be a species of cognition. Memory is the power of retaining and reproducing mental or sensory impressions. The image is the image of what was experienced in the past. It is part of Mati jnana.

From the realistic point of view, Jīva is pure Darśana and Jñāna, though from the popular point of view, Darśana is of four kinds while Jñāna is of eight kinds, as just discussed. Jainism examines everything from different points of view and makes no dogmatic assertion. The Nyāya philosophy does not recognise the identity of a quality and its possessor, while Jainism recognises the identity between the two. It has been clearly stated in the Pancastikāya that Darśana and Jñāna are identical with Jīva and are not separable from it.\textsuperscript{22}

Mention is already made that in this world we find Jīva normally in some form, though from the real point of view, Jīva has no form; it has neither colour, nor taste, nor smell nor touch. In its natural condition, Jīva is invisible. It is only because of its association or combination with Pudgala or Karmic
matter, it becomes visible. It is only when Jīva is in bondage of Karma (pudgala) that we find it possessing the characteristics of the latter viz. form, touch, taste, smell and colour. The souls in bondage and subject to transmigration are called samsārī Jīvas. A Jīva is the enjoyer of the fruits of the karmas.

The Jīva is formless but when embodied, it occupies the same extent as its body. It has the character of upward motion. A Jīva fills up either a small or large body. This view is criticised by the Vedāntins who contend that it is impossible that the same Jīva can enter the body of a fly or an elephant. In support of their view the Jains argue that just as a lamp illumines the whole of the space by its lights, whether it is placed in a small pot or a big room, so also, a Jīva contracts or expands according to the size of the body in which it is embodied. This is only from the popular point of view as according to the realistic point, the soul occupies innumerable pradesas in the Lokākāśa. As regards the characteristic of upward motion, it has been stated in the Pāncāstikāya that when a soul is freed from the impurity of the Karma, it goes upward to the end of the Loka. The point has been discussed already with reference to Siddha-Śīlā.

The samsāri Jīvas or the transmigrating souls are divided into two kinds: those with minds (samanaska) and those without minds (amanaska). The mind is either physical (dravya) or psychic (bhāva). According to Jain thinkers, mind is anindriya or non-sense-organ. The other senses are external while the mind is internal. The mind does not come in contact directly with any object; it cognises such objects as are already perceived by the senses. The physical mind is nothing but the material atoms transformed into the form of mind. The psychic mind is the result of purity of soul. Those endowed with mind possess the power of discriminating between the good and the evil.

The transmigrating souls are of two classes: trasa (mobile) and sthāvara (immobile). This distinction is based on the fruition of the karmas, not on their character of movability or
immovability. The immobile beings which are possessed of one sense viz. the sense of touch are of various kinds while trasa Jīvas are classified on the basis of the number of senses they are possessed of viz. two, three, four, five. Jīvas with five senses are of two classes, that is, those with mind and those without mind. Jīvas having one sense are either bādara or sūkṣma. They are all again divided into two varieties each viz. paryāpta or developable and aparyāpta or undevelopable.

Though the Dravya Samgraha in verse 12 briefly mentions fourteen varieties of Jīvas commonly known as Jīva-samāsa in Jaina philosophy, many more classes are mentioned in the works like the Gommatāsāra (Jīva-kānda).

From the protoplasm of the germ-cell to a full grown up human being, there is an infinite number of souls or living beings in the universe. The protoplasm so far as is known at present has no ears to hear, no eyes to see, no nose to smell, no tongue to taste; it has only the sense of touch. The human being has all the five senses fully developed and distinct, and a mind also which is a sort of additional and higher sense (a quasi sense), the organ of which sense is invisible to us. According to Jainism, it is an organ which is made up of subtle matter called Manovargana, or mental matter. Its form is like a lotus with eight petals near the heart. Professor Tread and eminent war-surgeons dispute the brain as the seat of mental activity. In war time operations, brains were removed without impairing the mental faculties.

Dealing with the sthāvāra or immobile Jīvas which are possessed of one sense, the sense of touch, they are either gross (bādara) or fine (sūkṣma). Again, they are either developable (paryāpta) or undevelopable (aparyāpta). These beings are earth-bodied, water-bodied, fire-bodied, air-bodied beings as also the plants. These beings are named so on the basis of the fruition of the Nāma Karmas. They are possessed of the four vitalities: the sense-organ of touch, strength of body or energy, respiration and span of life. The earth-bodied being is that which has earth
for its body; to put it in another way, it is the soul that lives in the earth body. The same is the case with water-bodied beings. Examples for the first type are quarry, diamond or coal in mine, stones, metals, vermilion, orpiment (or yellow mineral), etc., for the second type: water, dew, snow, fog; for the third type: flames, lightning, meteors, salamander etc.; for the fourth type: the tiny living creature we breathe in. The fifth class is of the vegetable-souled kingdom, either individual-souled or host-souled.

The fine one-sensed souls cannot be known by our senses. They penetrate all matter and are everywhere in the universe. They do not obstruct others nor are they obstructed by others. Some are born with a capacity to develop while others, not.

Vanaspati (Nigoda) or vegetable kingdom has a vast variety of beings: plants, trees, shrubs, grass, vegetable crops of different varieties, garlic, onion, fruits, flowers, etc. Sir J. C. Bose has shown by his experiments that the plants have life and capacity of experience. Recent experiments have disclosed that music has a healthy effect on the growth of plants and crops. All the varieties of Nigoda beings which are visible to us are gross or it may be that Vanaspati is taken as a variety of Nigoda. The fine ones are everywhere in the universe and are invisible. They are different from water-bodied or fire-bodied or earth-bodied souls. There are vegetables which have one body and one soul. There are also vegetables which have one body with many souls. They are called Nitya-Nigoda. Most of the vegetable-kingdom is paryāpta as they are capable of development or growth with the availability of food, drink, etc. They are immobile as they do not possess the inherent capacity to move.

The two-sensed beings possess the senses of touch and smell. Worms, oysters, conches, leeches. The three-sensed beings possess the senses of touch, smell and sight. The examples of it are bugs, lice, ants, and moths. The beings which have four senses of taste, smell, sight and hearing are bees, flies, and mosquitoes.
Among the five-sensed beings, there are various classes. They are divided into three classes: those that reside in water like the fish, crocodile, whale, etc.; those that live on earth like the cows, elephants, buffaloes; and those that live in air like birds, bat, etc.

Human beings are divided into two categories: those who are fully grown up and those who are infirm or not fully developed. It is only those who are mentally and physically developed that can develop all the inherent potentialities of the self and aspire for release from the cycle of birth. Those whose sense-organs and psychical faculties are fully developed can be healthy and balanced in thought and action. The human beings are endowed with the mind whose function is to find out the means of attaining the good and avoid the evil. Those with a mind are also known as Samjñā jīvas.  

The celestial beings and the infernal beings are born by instantaneous rise in special beds. It has been mentioned in the earlier (Tattvārtha) sūtra that there are three kinds of birth for the earthly beings: (1) umbilical (with a sac covering) like children, (2) incubatory (like an egg), e.g. chickens, etc. and (3) unumbilical (without a sac covering) like the cubs, deer, etc. These three kinds of births alone constitute uterine birth. The celestial beings are born in box-beds while the infernal beings are born in bladders hung from the ceilings of the holes in hell.  

The celestial beings or the devas are so born in that state as a result of their meritorious Karmas (punya). They always amuse themselves and possess a shining body called the vaikriyika śarira. It is a fluid body and the devas can therefore assume any form they like. The body has no flesh, bone or blood and therefore no filthy excretions come out from it. It is lustrous. The devas have eight heavenly acquisitions by their very nature: (1) Animā is the capacity to shrink their bodies or make them small. (2) Mahimā is the capacity to expand their bodies to any dimensions. (3) Laghimā is the capacity to make their bodies very light. (4) Garimā is the capacity to make them very
heavy. (5) Sakāma-rūpitva is capacity to adopt any form of body or any number of bodies at one and the same time. (6) Vaśitā is the capacity to bring others under subjection. (7) Iśitva is the capacity to exhibit superiority over others. (8) Prakāmya is the power to act as they desire.34

On the rise of the karmas leading to a birth in the Celestial state, those beings (Devas) roam freely and derive pleasure in several parts like mountains and oceans of the terrestrial world. They are endowed with magnificence splendour and extra-ordinary powers as already indicated. There are differences amongst them both as regards their status and duration of life.

There is a full discussion of the Celestial beings in Chapter IV of the Tatvārthasūtra by Uṃāsvāmi. There are four types of Celestial Beings: 1) Bhavanavāsī or the Residential; 2) Vyantara or the peripatetic; 3) Jyotiṣka or the Stellar; 4) Vaimānika or the heavenly. There are again ten classes among the Residential Devas, eight classes among the Peripatetic Devas, five among the Stellar Devas and twelve among the Heavenly Devas. There are grades among them of superior or inferior kind. The Residential Devas and some others enjoy sexual pleasures as they are actuated by Karmas which cause affliction and uneasiness. The others derive pleasure by listening to sweet song, gentle laughter, lovely words and the pleasant sounds of ornaments worn by their Devis. The Residential Devas live in mansions while the peripatetic Devas live in the upper regions beyond the innumerable islands and oceans. The Stellar Devas comprise the sun, the moon, the planets, stars and the constellations. As they are endowed with light, they are called luminaries. These luminaries spread over space which is one hundred and ten Yojanās in thickness. Horizontally the space is of the extent of innumerable islands and oceans up to the humid atmosphere.35 The Heavenly Beings who possess the merit (pūnya) reside in three types of Vimānas called Indraka, Śreni, and Puṣpapraṅka. There are sixteen heavens one above the other. The Vaimānikas who live higher up are superior
up to those residing lower down owing to their Karmas with regard to life-time, power, happiness, brilliance, purity in thought, capacity of the senses and range of clairvoyance. In the higher ups, there is less of pride and other passions. All the Devas are of different thought-complexions or colours.

The only other beings that remain for consideration are the Nārakis or those who inhabit the hells. These regions are seven one below the other, surrounded by the circle of humid atmosphere which is supported by dense air which itself rests on thin air. Each of these regions has respectively the lustre of jewel (Ratnaprabhā), the colour of pebbles (Saṅkaraprabhā), the colour of sand (Vālukaprabhā) the colour of clay or mud (Paṅkaprabhā), the colour of smoke (Dhūmaprabhā), the colour of darkness (Tamaḥprabhā) and the colour of thick darkness (Mahātamaḥprabhā). These regions are surrounded by three kinds of air and space.

Owing to the adverse nature of these regions, everything about the infernal beings is disagreeable, causing pain and anguish. The thoughts of these beings are impure and foul. Their environment and bodies reel with pain and all that increases as one goes down the lower regions. Their bodies are deformed, loathsome and hideous. Their sight is repulsive and fearful. Their bodily shapes are disgusting to look at. In the first four regions the inmates suffer from excessive heat while those in the lower regions suffer from intense cold. The activities of the infernal beings which are directed towards promotion of happiness result only in misery and suffering of unbearable type which increases in intensity by degrees as the regions go lower down. Due to their Karmas, the infernal beings are born with all the suffering and mental anguish. When they move closer, their animosity increases and their recollections of the past infuses hatred and enmity towards one another. They indulge in mutual attack with weapons of various types and cause increased suffering to one another. Owing to the rise of Āsuri Karma in them, they are actuated by malice and cause unbearable pain to others. They cause pain by making
others drink molten iron, embrace red-hot iron pillars, and ascend and descend the tree with sharp thorns. They also strike others with hammers, cut them with hatchets and knives, sprinkle boiling oil on them... and crush them in oil press. Their life-time cannot be cut short as they cannot meet with premature death due to the various sorts of injuries suffered by them."

The above discussion gives us a clear idea about the states of existence (gati) which a soul passes through. The gatis are, human, Celestial, Tiryanka and Nāraki. We have found that life is embodied in an endless variety of bodies and states. There are obvious differences of body, sense and mind in different beings, though the classification is entirely based on the kind of body.

The question that finally emerges is: What is the cause of these changes in the journey of a soul in the universe? Is it by chance that the metamorphosis takes place or is there any law which offers a reasonable and convincing explanation? Is it possible for the souls which are inherently pure and perfect to free themselves from the shackles or bondages and regain their perfection? Jainism has provided answers to these essential questions that arise in life and we shall now see how bondage of the soul comes about before we can investigate into the methods of release from bondage.
Bibliography and References

2. Ibid, P. xiii.
5. Ibid, P. 126.
6. Ibid, P. 129.
17. Ibid, PP. 36.
   Sri. Digambar Jaina Svadhyaya Mandir, Trust, Songadh, Saurashtra.
27. Nemichand Siddhānta Chakravarti: *Gommatasara* (Jiva Kāṇḍa) Verses 72, 73, 78 to 80.
   Vira Sasana Sangha, 29 Indra Visvas Road, Calcutta-37.
CHAPTER VII

THE DOCTRINE OF KARMA

"Our deeds still travel with us from a far,
And what we have been makes us what we are"

-George Elliot

The doctrine of Karma occupies a more significant position in the Jaina philosophy than it does in the other Indian philosophies. It is a matter of common experience that happiness and misery are experienced without any apparent reason. Good men suffer and wicked persons appear to thrive enjoying life without any difficulty. Persons with merit and possessing high educational qualifications seem to rot at the bottom while people with lesser abilities with pious character are found suffering, facing difficulties of various types. These inequalities are explained away popularly by reference to fate or destiny. Others say that "there is a Divinity that shapes our ends, rough hew them how we will". Are men and women helpless creatures at the mercy of some force, known or unknown?

The supreme importance of the doctrine of Karma lies in providing a rational and satisfying explanation to the apparently inexplicable phenomena of birth and death, of happiness and misery, of inequalities in mental and physical attainments and of the existence of different species of living beings.
It is the basic principle of Jainism that every Jīva or soul is possessed of consciousness, and of upayoga comprising the powers of perception and of knowledge; it has no form but is the doer of all actions; it has the capacity to occupy the full dimensions of the body which embodies it: it is the enjoyer of the fruits of its actions and located in the changing universe; it has an inherent tendency to move upwards and is a Siddha in its state of perfection. From the popular point of view, it is possessed of the four prāṇas: the senses, power, span of life and respiration. From the real point of view the soul is identical with consciousness.

If these are the characteristics of Jīva as already explained in the previous chapter, how is it that a Jīva finds itself entangled in the Saṁsāra suffering life and death, happiness and misery? In the world, only a few souls are in a state of comparative development and the rest of them are in forms and bodies which are blind to their real nature.

The answer to this enigma is to be found in the operation of Karmic matter which draws a veil over the natural qualities of the soul crippling their powers in varying degrees. Jainism starts with the premise that the soul is found entangled with Karma from eternity. It is the primary function of religion to stop the influx and mitigate the presence of Karma with the soul and to show the path of liberation and the methods through which the soul could achieve perfection.

What then is the nature of Karma? In ordinary parlance Karma means action, deed or work. Sometimes, it means acts of ritualistic nature enjoined by the scriptures. In Jaina philosophy, it means a form of matter or pudgala. It is inert and lifeless. It is very fine and subtle. It cannot be perceived or discerned by any of our senses. It cannot be seen even with the most sensitive microscope, with the maximum magnifying capacity. It baffles all analysis at the hands of a chemist or physicist who neither identify nor analyse it. It is millions of times finer and subtler than the waves of sound, light or electricity, or the electrons or
protons conceived by modern science. Yet the matter is ever surrounding us on all sides and permeating the entire space and atmosphere. It is the primary cause which keeps the universe going. Every phenomenon in the universe is the manifestation of the Karmic effect.¹

How does the influx or accession of the Karma with the soul take place? The vibration of the soul is called yoga or activity. The activity may be due to the body, speech or thought. The vibrations in the soul occur as a result of the bodily activity or the activity of the molecules composing the organ of speech or consequent on the activity of the molecules composing the mind. Just as water flows into the lake by means of streams, so also the Karmic matter flows into the soul through the channel or medium of activity. Hence activity which is the cause of influx of Karma is called Āsṛva.² The thought activity is called the Bhāva-Karma while the actual matter flowing into the soul and binding it is called Dravya-Karma. Though the soul is pure and perfect, it is the flowing in of the Karmic particles that obscures its innate qualities in the manner in which the light of the sun is obscured by thick clouds or blinding dust. One may as well ask how an immaterial being like the self can be obscured by material particles. Common experience tells us that many of the inner qualities of a human being like decency, self-restraint and coherent speech become obscured and perverted by consumption of intoxicating drugs or drinks.

Karma may result in or cause the influx of punya (merit) or pāpa (demeit or sin) according as the activity is virtuous (āsūrha) or wicked (aśūrha). The intention underlying an activity and its consequences are both taken into account. Causing injury, stealing etc., are bodily activities which are evil. Similarly harsh speech, lying etc. are evil activities of speech. Envy, hatred, jealousy are evil activities of the mind. That which purifies the soul or brings happiness is merit. Sin produces misery, pain, or uneasiness.

Karmas differ from another point of view also. They may differ in their nature (prakṛti) or manner of effect (parināma);
they may differ in the duration of their effect (sthitī); there may be difference in the intensity of their effect (anubhāga or rasa) or in their quantity (pradesā). These depend upon the nature of the activity, depending upon the circumstances and the cause actuating such activity. The nature of the influx differs according as the activity is feeble or intense; it will also depend upon the intentional or unintentional, nature of the activity. Circumstances, both external and internal, may combine to make the feeling or activity very acute or feeble. Sometimes acts are done with intention or carelessly. Supposing a person kills another as an act of revenge or intentionally, the act is done knowingly and the gravity of the passion so aroused is strong. If, on the other hand, a person treads on an ant and kills it unknowingly, there is no intention to kill. The influx of karma also differs according as the person is or is not actuated by kaśāyas or passions like, anger, pride, deceitfulness and greed. Apart from the five senses and four passions, there are five kinds of vowlessness: killing, uttering falsehood, stealing, unchastity and attachment. These cause the activities of the body, speech and mind and are therefore the channels of influx of Karmas which lead to the cycle of births and deaths.

Eight Kinds of Karmas

It is thus clear that apart from the fact that the soul is bound with Karmic matter from eternity, it becomes involved every moment into the influx of fresh Karmic matter. In this mundane existence, each of the infinite number of souls in the universe is a distinct entity subject to its own Karmas according to its own activities and spiritual progress. So the old Karmas become auxiliary causes for modifications of the soul's vibrations and passions. Even though the soul is pure, it becomes affected with the molecules of material Karmas due to various kinds of activities as noticed above and become causes of wrong belief, ignorance, passionate conduct etc. Just as the soul produces its thought-activities owing to the material Karmas, it also experiences the fruits of those activities due to material molecules of the Karmas. That is how the various kinds of material obstructive Karmas obscure
the real nature of the soul and render realization of the qualities of the self difficult.

Therefore, Karmas which obscure the four great attributes of the soul, viz, infinite perception, infinite knowledge, infinite power and infinite bliss, and thereby hinder it from realising them, are respectively called Darśanāvaraṇīya, Jñānāvaraṇīya, Antarāya and Mohaniya. While the first one obscures the attribute of perception, the second one obscures knowledge, the third one hinders soul's power and obstructs its passage to success; and the fourth one creates a delusion disabling the soul from knowing what is real happiness and what is infatuation. Since these four kinds of Karmas obscure each of the supreme attributes of the soul, they are called the ghātīya or destructive Karmas.

The remaining four kinds of Karmas do not destroy the qualities of the soul but merely affect its mundane existence. They are: Āyus, Nāma, Gotra and Vedāntīya. The first Karma determines the duration of life and other conditions of existence; the second one determines the character of one's personality like the body, height, colour, size, etc.; the third one determines one's family, nationality, etc.; the fourth one determines the nature of the pleasure and pain that one suffers in mundane life. Since these do not affect the essential attributes of the soul, they are called aghātīya or non-destructive Karmas. Thus there are eight kinds of Karmas.  

Ghātī Karmas

Now it is necessary to find out the causes of each of these Karmas so that one may prevent the accumulation of such Karmas and try to free oneself from them. Since Umāsvāmi has dealt with the Jñānāvaraṇīya Karma first, I shall also discuss it first.

Jñānāvaraṇīya Karma

Spite or hatred against knowledge, concealment of knowledge from others, declining or failing to import knowledge due to envy or jealousy, causing obstruction or impediment to others in the
acquisition of knowledge, disregarding true knowledge, or disparaging true knowledge lead to influx of Karmas that obscure knowledge and perception. Since perception precedes comprehension, the Ācārya has used the two words Jñāna and Darśana together in the concluding part of the Sūtra. Jñāna is of five kinds: Mati Jñāna, Śruta Jñāna, Avadhi Jñāna, Manaḥ-paryāya Jñāna, and Kevala Jñāna. Mati Jñāna is that knowledge which is obtained through the senses while Śruta-Jñāna is that which is obtained by the study of scriptures, either by reading or hearing others reading the same. Avadhi-Jñāna is extra-perceptual knowledge enabling its possessor to perceive events happening at distant places. It may refer to the past, present or future. It is called clairvoyance. Manaḥ-paryāya Jñāna is telepathic knowledge. Kevala-Jñāna is omniscience which the liberated ones alone possess.

The various acts mentioned in the Sūtra are responsible for the influx of Karma which obstructs or obscures the knowledge of the soul. They are transgressions of normal rules of conduct and attitude of mind. Real learning in a man or woman should make such person humble. Knowledge is infinite and consciousness of this fact should sink down the ego. But there are some people who think that they have known all that could be known and feel envious of others reputed for learning. Here learning refers to true knowledge of self which shows the way to liberation. One should not spit another and parade one’s own knowledge with a sense of vanity. Apart from exhibition of spite (pradoṣa), there are instances of concealment of one’s own knowledge and declining to teach others due to envy (mātsarya). There may be cases where teachers exhibit indifference or disregard (āsādana) to what is taught by others. There may be cases of disparagement (upaghāta) or belittling what is taught by others. While the former involves lack of veneration, the latter refers to condemnation of true knowledge as false. All these are cases of varieties of perverted minds. These mental activities breed Karmas which obscure both perception and knowledge. The causes of Karmas obscuring the first two kinds of knowledge have been discussed above. The
remaining three kinds of knowledge depend upon the manifestation the inner powers of the soul. The possibility of manifestation depends upon whether an individual is a bhavya orabhavya. An individual is a bhavya who is possessed of or develops right faith, right knowledge and right conduct. So long as these qualities of the soul do not manifest themselves in an individual or so long as an individual remains an abhavya, the three kinds of knowledge remain dormant and there is no hope of manifestation of any of them. He is not destined for liberation.

**Darśanāvaraṇiya Karma**

The causes of this kind of Karma are: attributing faults and shortcomings to the omniscient, the scriptures, the association of ascetics, the true religion and the Celestial Beings. Such activities or speech and mind lead to the influx of faith-deluding Karmas. The omniscients possess perfect knowledge and the scriptures are composed on the basis of knowledge that is passed on by the Gaṇadhārās or their disciples. The ascetics form a group (saṅgha) or association with an Ācārya as the head. True religion is one which helps an individual to destroy the Karmas and attain liberation from the Samsāra. Faith, in this context, consists of belief in the truth of what is stated in a scripture or the infallibility of individuals; it is firm belief in the greatness of superiority of individuals in knowledge and, purity of mind and character. Slanderings the great souls and imagining defects where there are none is avarṇavāda.

Darśanāvaraṇiya is subdivided into nine classes: Caksu Darśanāvaraṇiya, Ācaksu Darśanāvaraṇiya, Avadhi Darśanāvaraṇiya, Kevala Darśanāvaraṇiya, Nidrā, Nidrānidrā, Pracalā, Pracalapracalā and Stīyānagṛddhi. Caksu Darśanāvaraṇiya is Karma which obscures the awareness through the ocular sense or the eyes. This is occasioned by some defect in the psycho-physical mechanism which interferes with the normal condition of visual perception. Ācaksu Darśanāvaraṇiya is that kind of Karma which obscures the non-occular kinds of perception. It obviously refers to perception through other than sense organs like skin, tongue,
nose, ear. It is through these organs that an individual gets awareness of touch, taste, smell and sound. So long as any or all the sensory mechanisms are functioning properly, awareness through the corresponding sense-organ will be normal. It is common experience that some persons have one or more organs impaired and there is no awareness through such organ. Cakṣu and Acakṣu Darśana have obvious reference to experiences of senses in the external world.

Avadhi-darśanāvaranīya, like the Avadhi Jñānāvaranīya refers to that kind of Karma which prevents the soul from super-perception without reference to time or space. General ignorance, wrong beliefs about the reality, passions and delusions are causes of obscuring the capacity of perfect perception. That is the effect of Kevala-darśanāvaranīya Karma.

The other forms of Darśanāvaranīya Karma which produce the psycho-physical conditions obscuring the capacity of perception are: sleep (nidrā), deep sleep, (nidrā-nidrā), sleep while sitting (pracala) which is popularly known as drowsiness, heavy drowsiness heavy drowsiness (pracala-pracala) and sleep-walking committing some bodily actions (styaṇagṛddhi). This is otherwise termed as somnambulism or indulging in wicked activity while in sleep. All these are psycho-physical conditions which naturally obscure the capacity of perception.

Antarāya

The third destructive Karma is Antarāya which is responsible for creation of mental conflicts so as to prevent or create a sense of indecision in the individual in performance of beneficial acts conducive to the ethical and spiritual progress of the soul. Antarāya Karma is of five kinds: those which obstruct (1) charity or dāna, (2) gain or lābha, (3) enjoyment or bhoga of consumable things, (4) enjoyment of non-consumable things (upabhoga) and (5) effort of exertion (vīrya). These five kinds of obstructive karmas hinder the individual from activities which are conducive to merit or renunciation. As an instance of the first one, we may refer to usual experiences of many persons.
They are inclined to give something in charity but somehow, there is some feeling or thought which prevents them from giving effect to charitable decision. The mind becomes indecisive and hesitation starts resulting in cancellation of the decision to give in charity. The second prevents them from enjoying profits or gains made by him. The third and the fourth Karmas hinder them from enjoying thing or properties, consumable or non-consumable, or movable or immovable, even though they possess them and desire to use and enjoy them. There are many instances in life where men accumulate and are deprived of their use or enjoyment by some unforeseen cause. It is the result of these Karmas. The fifth one prevents them from making efforts in the direction of achieving something good and benefical to the soul. The hindrance may be either with reference to the spiritual activities or worldly success.

Mohaniya

Creation of obstacles in the wages of others is the cause of Antarāya Karma or obstructive Karmas. Causing obstructions to others in the performance of deeds of charity, generosity, conferring of public benefit, helping those in difficulties, undertaking works of public utility are the causes for the influx of obstructive Karmas. From the point of fruition of this kind of Karma, any activity obstructive of a good act or speech is sufficient.

The fourth destructive Karma is Mahaniya Karma. It obscures the power of discrimination and creates an infatuation or delusion in the individual in his approach to various matters in life. These Karmas are of twenty-eight kinds. These are: the three sub-types of faith-deluding Karmas, the two types of conduct-deluding Karmas which cause (and which are caused by) passions and quasi-passions, the sub-types of passions and the quasi-passions, being sixteen and nine, respectively. The operation of this Karma makes the individual blind to the true nature of self. His knowledge, faith and conduct would either be false, or perverted. There are two main sub-divisions in the
Mohaniya Karma: (i) the faith deluding and (ii) the conduct-deluding. In all there are twenty-eight types of Mohaniya Karmas.

As regards the Faith-deluding (Darśana-Mohaniya) Karmas, they are of three kinds. The first is Mithyātva or wrong belief. The wrong belief relates to true nature of the self, the tenets preached by the Tirthankaras and the validity of the scriptures composed by the great saints. The second one concerns a stage of mental attitude where the right and wrong beliefs are mixed up and there is inability to distinguish between the two. This is called Samyag-mithyātva-miśra. The last one is Samyatva-Prakṛti. This is a state where the right belief is clouded by slight wrong belief, a sort of wavering. The firmness of right belief is somewhat hazy.

Cāritra Mohaniya or right-conduct deluding Karmas are of 28 types.

On the rise of the first kind of Karma, the individual turns away from the path revealed by the omniscient, becomes indifferent to the faith in the true nature of reality and is incapable of discriminating what is beneficial to him and what is not. An attitude so produced is a perverse attitude; if it is restrained by right and virtuous thought-activity, then there is no obstruction to the right faith. If the perverse attitude is mixed up with the purified state, then we have the second type. The Jainas liken the influence of these three classes of Mohaniya Karma to the results arising from taking the grain krodra. If this grain is eaten without any preparation, it causes the most intense giddiness so as to bewilder the eater greatly. Such is the effect of Mithyātva. If the husk of the grain is removed, the effect is less stupefying and resembles that of miśra, whereas, if the grain is thoroughly cleansed, the occasional slight uneasiness it may cause is comparable to Samyatva.11

Cāritra Mohaniya (or conduct deluding) Karma is of 25 kinds. It is difficult to deal with them in detail in this book. The passions or the kaśāyas are four in the main: anger, pride,
deceit and greed. Each of these has four sub-divisions and conduct which is affected by them leads to endless cycle of worldly existence. The four sub-divisions are: anantānu-bandhin or that Karma which extends to the duration of entire life; apratyākhyaṇāvarama or the non-preventable emotion of any of the passions; Pratyakhyāvarama or preventable or controllable passions; Samjvālana or flaring up of passion but controllable by self-discipline. The duration of the 2nd, 3rd and 4th kinds of Karmas is respectively one year, four months and fifteen days. The degrees of strength of Kaśāyas are illustrated by examples. The four species of anger are to be likened unto a line drawn in stone, in earth, in dust and in water. The first can be removed with great effort, each following one always more easily. Likewise also, the life-long enduring anger is only combated in its effect with exceeding strength and difficulty while the effect of the three remaining species accordingly diminishes in power and can therefore, also more easily be destroyed. The degrees of pride are to be likened unto a pillar of stone, a bone, a piece of wood, and the liana of a Dalbergia ogeinensis; the inflexibility correspondingly decreases. The species of deceitfulness are to be compared to a bamboo-root, the horn of a ram, the urine of a cow, and a piece of wood. The crookedness of each of these is removed more and more easily than in the preceding one. (The zig-zag line of the cow’s urine disappears through the influence of wind and weather.) The degrees of greed correspond to scarlet colour, to greater or smaller dirt, and to a spot of turmeric, which soil a garment: the scarlet is hardly removable, the dirt with more or less trouble, and the spot of turmeric can be removed with ease.12

The Nokāṣāyas (non-passions)

The six non-passions are: (1) hāsya, laughing or joking, (2) Rati; improper and confirmed prejudicial liking, (3) arati, improper and confirmed prejudicial disliking, (4) soka—sorrow, (5) bhaya, fear, (6) jugupsā, disgust. All these six are Čārita-Mohanīyas, because the soul which is subjected to them, is hindered through them in the practice of right conduct. These
mere sensations of pain and pleasure do not have this retarding effect; and that is why one must distinguish between the vedantiyas and the nokaśāyas.\textsuperscript{13}

This kind of Karma leads to wrong faith and arrests the spiritual development of the house-holder or the ascetic. There are nine Nokaśāyas or quasi-passions: hāśya or laughter, rati or indulgence, gratification, arati or dissatisfaction, dislike, soka or sorrow, bhaya or fear, or jugupsa or aversion, disgust, striveda or hankering after or longing for women, pumveda or hankering after men and napūmsakaveda or longing for the neuter sex. All these are the causes of different Karmas. They can be controlled by self-restraint. All these emotional experiences upset determines the balance of thought and action and the intensity of the passions the duration of the Karmas. When one is actuated by passions or quasi-passions, there takes place influx of conduct-deluding Karmas. There are people who ridicule right faith in others and deride those in distress or misery. Sometimes laughter is a matter of aimless sport. Association with men or women of disgust ignoble character leads both to misery and sorrow. Feeling of for others or behaving with hatred, or feeling intense attachment towards persons of opposite sexes are all causes that soil the soul and attract fresh Karmas.

Aghātiya Karmas

These are of four kinds: Ayu, Nāma, Gotra and Vedāntiya. Each of these has reference to beings born in any of the four states (gatis) of existence: human, celestial, hellish and sub-human.

Āyu Karma

The life-karmas determine the quantum of life in the states of existence as infernal beings, plants, animals, human beings and celestial beings. That Karma which determines the duration of life of an individual being in a particular state is called infernal-life Karma, trīyanta-life Karma, human-life Karma and celestial life Karma. It is responsible for determination of the duration of life of each individual being in its state of existence. When the
duration of the Karma is exhausted, the being must die. It is therefore this Karma which is responsible for the birth and death of an individual being.

Umaśvāmi has explained the causes of influx of karmas which lead to life in different states of existence. Excessive infliction of pain and attachment cause influx of Karma which leads to life in infernal regions. The Śūtra uses the two words ārāmbha and parigraha. While the former word means infliction of pain and suffering on living beings, the latter refers to excessive attachment to various object in the universe. Causing of excessive pain and suffering either by killing or by serious injury is the cause of influx of this Karma which is responsible for birth in hell. Constant cruel activities and misappropriation of other’s property due to excessive attachment to material possessions are the causes of this Karma.

Deceitfulness causes the influx of life-Karma leading to the animal and vegetable words. Deceitful disposition of the soul is the result of conduct-deluding Karma. That leads to birth in the animal world. The preaching of religion from a perverted attitude, lack of good conduct and propriety, desire for cheating others, blue and grey thought-colouration of the soul and mournful concentration during death are the varieties of deceitful conduct giving rise to life-Karma leading to the tiryānca gati.

Slight injury, slight attachment and natural mildness in character are the causes of life-Karma that leads to human life. Humility, gentle disposition, excellent behaviour, slight passion, freedom from distressful disposition at death, gentleness by nature are some of the causes that are responsible for the Karma leading to human birth. In other words, compassion, kindness, love, affection, honesty and truthfulness may be mentioned as some of the characteristics that lead to this life-Karma.

Right belief, restraint from attachment, self-restraint mixed with laxity, liberation from the Karmas in an involuntary manner, austerities attended with perverted faith cause the influx of life-Karmas leading to celestial birth. Self-restraint is the key to
purity of conduct and thought. It often happens with some people that when they are fully restrained in their mind and speech, they are disturbed by indecision. People observe austerities under wrong beliefs. Added to it, is the right faith. Since right faith is mentioned separately, it appears that by itself it is sufficient to cause the influx of life—Karma leading to celestial birth. The only way of reconciling the two Sūtras is to point out that those souls which have right faith will not be subject to any of the infirmities which affect the other souls which do not possess such faith. In fact, there cannot be right faith, unless there is awareness of the true nature of the soul and its non-connection with worldly objects.

Nāma Karma

It is this kind of Karma that determines the kind of character of the body in which a soul will be embodied. We have already noticed that a soul is born in any of the four states of existence, celestial, human, sub-human and infernal. Naturally there will be difference in the nature of the body, its size, colour, height. The nāma Karma is primarily of two kinds, piṇḍa-prakṛti or physical or concrete qualities, and apiṇḍa-prakṛti or non-physical or non-concrete qualities.

Nāma Karma is an extremely interesting principle, almost anticipating many elements of the modern biological theory. It is again divided into 93 classes. Modern biology tries to explain the origin and growth of an organism postulating the enzymes and genes, microscopic factors which determine the growth of the organic body. Similarly the theory of Nāma Karma formulated by the Jaina thinkers thousands of years ago tries to explain many of the biological problems such as, the difference between one genus and other genus of organisms, the bodily structure as vertebrate or invertebrate, the different methods of bone joints in the body, the systematical arrangements of the members in the structure of the sensory organs in the body, etc. These sense organs in the body whether completely developed and functionally effective or whether imperfectly developed or functionally inefficient—
these factors are explained by different kinds of Nāma Karma which operate and guide the construction of the organic body in each individual.18

Umāsvāmi gives the particularities of the Nāma Karma on the rise of which a living being is born in another state of existence. The Nāma (physique-making) Karmas comprise the state of existence, the class, the body, the formation of the chief and secondary parts, the binding (union), molecular interfusion, structure, joints, touch, taste, smell, colour, movement after death, neither heavy nor light, self-annihilation, annihilation by others, emitting warm splendour, emitting cool lustre, respiration, guilt, individual body, mobile being, amiability, a melodious voice, beauty of form, minute body, complete development (of the organs), firmness, lustrous body, glory and renown, and the opposite of these (commencing from individual body), and the Tīrthankaratva.19

The enumeration is wonderfully comprehensive so as to cover all states of existence and the classes of beings with (i) the sense of touch only, (ii) senses of touch and taste, (iii) senses of touch, taste, smell, (iv) senses of touch, taste, smell, and sight, (v) and senses of touch, taste, smell, sight and hearing. This is due to the rise of Nāma-Karma of the class of one-seened being and so on.

The Nāma-Karma of the body is of five kinds; there are five kinds of śarīras or bodies (1) the audārīka body or the gross body which is peculiar to human beings and animals; (2) vaikriyika or transformable body which is made up of fine and subtle matter capable of modifications in form and stature as the bodies of gods and denizens of hell; (3) āhāraka or a subtle or a spiritual man-like body which issues from the head of a perfect Jaina saint who has attained full knowledge and in consequence of the highly developed occult faculties of his soul and flashes across space to the feet of the master where its doubts are solved; (4) taijasa śarīra or a body with a halo or the electric (magnetic) body and (5) kārmanā śarīra or the body constituted of kārmic particles.
The causes of nāma-karma which are responsible for the
different kinds of bodies (śarīra-nāma-karma) have been explained
by Umāsvāmi. According to him crooked activities and deception
cause the influx of auspicious physique-making Karmas.
Crookedness is vakrata meaning departure from the straightforward ways, activities which are perverse and actuated by want
of rectitude. Deceiving others is another form of crookedness.
Both create mental vibrations of questionable character and if
activities succeed, they cause misery and suffering to others.
Both are unwholesome activities and do cause auspicious
physique-making Karmas. The greater the crookedness or
deception, the more intense is the nature of the Karma.

The opposite of these, viz., straightforward activity, honesty
and candour cause the influx of auspicious body-making Karmas.21
Those who are straightforward in their thoughts and speech
attract the auspicious Karmas. Persons of honesty and integrity
have respect for the virtuous. They honour the pious and the
holy saints. Such persons are aware of the misery of worldly
life and hence they are careful in thought and action.

Besides referring to the causes of auspicious physique-making
Karmas, there is a detailed enumeration of the thoughts and
actions which lead to influx of Tīrthankara-Nāma-Karma which
earns a victory over the three worlds. Again according to
Umāsvāmi, the influx of Tīrthankara-Nāma-Karma rises from
the sixteen observances, viz., purity of right faith, endowed with
reverence, observance of vows and supplementary vows without
any kind of transgressions, ceaseless pursuit of knowledge, constant
fear of the cycle of existence, giving charity, practising austerities,
in accordance with one's own capacity, removal of hindrances
affecting or likely to affect the equanimity of the ascetics, serving
the meritorious by warding off evil or suffering, devotion to the
Omniscient Lords, Chief preceptors, preceptors and the scriptures,
practice of the six essential daily duties, propagation of the
teachings of the Omniscient, and affection for one's brethren.22
These virtually cover the entire field of ethics and spiritual practices which lead to liberation of the soul. They will be discussed later.

The Āṅga-nāma-Karma is of various kinds relating to the different parts of the body like the head, chest, back, arms, stomach and feet. The Upāṅga-nāma-Karma refers to the five senses and parts of the main organs e.g. forehead, skull, palate, cheek, chin, teeth, lips, etc. The forms of the Nāma Karma relate to the formation of sinew, ligatures, shape of limbs, their proportion, the colour of the body, the qualities of touch and the condition of existence, etc. There are twenty-one kinds of Prakṛti-nāma-Karma which relate to the nature of quality and peculiarities of the body.

Gotra-Karma

Gotra-Karma is the third kind of non-destructive Karma which determines the status of the family, nationality, etc. Modern biologists accept the theory of heredity as a factor operating in the life of human beings and animals. The status determining Karman are of two kinds: the one determines the high status and the other low status. Owing to the former, individual takes birth in a noble family of high prestige and respectability. The other is responsible for birth in a low family where fame and prestige are unknown.

Umāsvāmi has said that censuring others, self-praise, being oblivious to the good qualities in others and proclaiming noble qualities which are not present in oneself cause the influx of Karman which lead to birth in a low status. There are many people who are blind to good qualities and virtues in others. They boast of themselves as the paragons of virtue and indulge in undue praise of themselves. Censuring others is a vice, vaingloriousness is equally so. On the other hand, the opposite qualities like modesty, humility and appreciating what is noble in others, etc., cause influx of Karman which lead to birth in a family of high status. Saluting the virtuous is humility. Modesty, inspite of learning, wealth and power, discloses absence of egotism and haughtiness.
Vedaniya Karma

The fourth kind of aghāti Karma is called vedaniya Karma which determines the painful and pleasurable experiences of an individual. The two Karmas which cause pleasant feeling and unpleasant feeling, respectively, are the two sub-types of feeling producing Karmas.\(^{26}\) The Karma is of two kinds: sātā-vedaniya, and asātā-vedaniya.

Sātā-vedaniya Karma is the result of influx of Karma which creates pleasant and happy experiences both in mind and body of the celestial and the human beings and animals. The activities which lead to the influx of this Karma as stated by Umāsvāmi are: compassion towards living beings in general and the devout in particular, charity, asceticism with attachment, etc., (that is, restraint-cum-non-restraint, involuntary dissociation of Karmas without effort, austerities not based on right knowledge), contemplation, equanimity and freedom from greed.\(^{27}\) All living beings are born in different conditions of existence according to their Karmas. There are some who become aware of the nature of soul and become devoted to vows, austerities and other acts of compassion. They reduce their worldly attachments and are generous in helping others. They express sympathy for the sufferings of others and do what they can to relieve them. They restrain themselves from undesirable activities. All these activities of mind and conduct lead to the influx of Karmas that bring about pleasant feelings.

The Asātā-vedaniya Karmas which are the causes of unpleasant or painful feelings are due to suffering, sorrow, agony, moaning, injury and lamentation in oneself, others or in both.\(^{28}\) All these experiences of pain and suffering are the results of passions like anger, greed, etc. They create a feeling of sadness because of want of self control, injury to person or property, disgrace suffered by immoral deeds or speech and cravings for things which are either undesirable or unwanted. There is no suffering where there is no passion. Many austerities are practised by devout persons: they involve no suffering because they are
undertaken voluntarily as acts of self-purification. There is no evil object behind it and the mind is full of calm and balance. A surgeon causes pain but his object is to cure the patient from the disease so as to free him from pain and further suffering.

These are the eight kinds of Karmas which infect the purity of the soul and obscure all or some of its inherent qualities. They are like foreign forces changing the direction of the course of soul and leading to entanglement in worldly existence. They are the real causes of ignorance, suffering, short-comings in life and inequalities in status. Our mind, speech and body are the real causes of their influx.

The theory of Karma is not the theory of fatalism. It is the law of cause and effect. It is the moral law of causation which shows that we are the makers of our fortunes or misfortunes. If a man enjoys or suffers, he does so as a consequence of his actions, thoughts or speech. The sense of fatalism comes in only when we overlook the element of choice. Under the influence of desire for champagne, a man may choose to drink it, though he may understand quite well that his body will be better served by choosing milk. The desire does not compel, it is only the instrumental cause of man's choice to drink champagne in preference to milk. He has the power of choosing to drink milk. When this is remembered, then there is no sense of fatalism in the act performed.\(^2\)

It would be further evident that this law of causation is not mechanical because consciousness is its essential factor. Life is a long journey; the living being moves on; if it desires its journey to be smooth and free from accidents, the brake of self-control has to be applied constantly. The passions are the forces that may try to derail the train but the knowledge of the real path and the faith in the efficacy of our vision must lead it to its real destination.

All living beings are born in a state of existence (gati) with a body with its span of life, colour, its environment and other
characteristics which are the results of past karmas. The Jaina Tirthankaras have analysed and shown us what the causes are. Each living being is the substantial cause of all that it is born with. The Karmas are the unnatural veils that obscure the qualities natural to the soul.

It is the function of religion to show the path of liberation. Those who are in an unclean or impure state must know how to get rid of impurities and develop the infinite qualities of the soul.

We shall see how man can get rid of the impurities that hinder his soul in its progress and find out what according to Jainism are the means to achieve that end.
Bibliography and References

5. Ibid. Chap. vi, Sutra 10.
8. Ibid. Chap. vi, Sutra 27.
11. Ibid. PP. 223–24 and Foot-note.
15. Ibid. Sutra 16.


*Note: References to Tattvarikasutra are from "Reality".*
CHAPTER VIII

THE DOCTRINE OF LEŞYA

Before dealing with some other aspects of Karma, it is instructive to discuss another doctrine which is closely connected with the Karma theory, that is the doctrine of Leşyas.

According to the concept of the Jaina thinkers, there are an infinite number of souls in the universe. All of them possess the essential characteristics of perfect knowledge, bliss, etc. The souls, however, differ on account of their entanglement with the subtle and invisible atomic forms of Karmic matter. The bright and blissful soul becomes blurred and clouded by Karmic matter which is set in motion by the passions and the activities of the body, mind and speech. The vibrations of the activities and of the kaşāyas determine the nature and material of bondage. The totality of Karma amalgamated by a soul induces on it a transcendental colour, a kind of complexion which cannot be perceived by our eyes. That is called Leşyā. There are six Leşyās: black, blue, grey, yellow, red and white. They have also a prominently moral bearing; for the Leşyā indicates the character of the individual who owns it. The first three belong to bad characters and the last three to good characters. In other words, the first three are the resultants of evil and the last three of good emotions.

Almost all the Jaina philosophers who have dealt with the subject of Karma have referred to and expanded theory of
Leśyā. Everything which is matter, or mixed up with matter has some kind or other of touch, taste, smell and odour. Our mind and its activity are no exception. They are material and have colour, which they change with every change of their thought activity. 'A black-hearted man', 'and red with rage', 'pale with fear', 'green with jealousy'; these are familiar phrases. Our thoughts and emotions have a very intimate connection with colours. We may be said to have thought-paints; but the primary ones are black, blue, grey, yellow, pink or red and white. The Leśyās are the soul’s vibrations effected by mild and strong passions. They illustrate the temperamental grades of greed, etc. The colour-shades, as enumerated are transcendental and not physical.

Nemicandra Siddhānta Cakravarti has stated that according to the knowers of the attributes of Leśyā, bhāva leśyā (thought paint) is that which stains the soul and which the soul makes it his own resulting in puṇya (merit) and pāpa (demerit). Colour or paint is a condition of the matter. The soul itself is without form, taste, smell, colour or touch. Colour is an essential and peculiar character of matter. Consciousness is the characteristic of the soul and modifications do take place on account of thought activities. These modifications are also formless and colourless. When the activities of the body, mind and speech as also the passions create vibrations, there takes place, as already noted, an influx of matter into the soul which causes bondage. It is this vibratory activity which becomes coloured by the operation of the Karmas. We have already noted that it is the vibratory activities which determine not only the nature of Karmic matter but also the number of Karmic molecules that bind the soul and that it is the intensity of the passions that determines the duration of the bondage and the character of its fruition.

As stated already, there are six kinds of Leśyas (paints), namely: Kṛṣṇa (black), nila (blue), kapota (dove-grey), teja (yellow), padma (pink) and śnukla (white). It may however be noted that from the view-point of modifications, these colours are innumerable. Leśyā is of two kinds, bhāva-leśyā and dravya-
lesyā. The former is thought-paint as explained while the letter is the product of body-making Karma. The beings in different states of existence have different bodily colours. The hellish beings are black while the other beings have any one of the six colours. The bodies in the uttama (supreme), madhyama (middle) and jaghanya (lowest) regions have the colours of the sun, the moon and green. The water-bodied, fire-bodied and air-bodied souls have white, yellow and indescribable coloured bodies.

The operation places (udaya-sthānas) of the passions are immovable spatial units of the universe. The bad passions or the bad thought-paints are black, blue and grey while those of the good thoughts are yellow, pink and white. The bad thought paints are either intense, more intense, or most intense. Similarly the good ones are mild, milder or mildest. By the decrease or increase in the intensity of the bad or good thought activity or passions, the thought-paint becomes modified. By the increase of pain, the thought-paint becomes modified through grey, blue and black. By the increase of the purity of the soul or good thoughts, the progress is through yellow, pink and white. It is thus clear that while the worst thought activity is black, the highest purity will disclose white. However, the Lesyās are more illustrative of the degree of intensity in terms of colour rather than actual colour.

Nemicandra Siddhānta Cakravarti has given a very illuminating example of the different thought-paints occasioned by the activities of the mind. Six travellers miss their way in the central part of a forest and see a tree laden with fruits. Naturally they have a desire to eat the fruits. The first one wants to uproot the entire tree and eat the fruits; he is actuated by black thought-paint. The second one wants to cut the trunk and eat the fruit; he is actuated by blue thought-paint. The third wishes to cut the branches and eat the fruits; he is actuated by the grey thought-paint. These three intended to cause great harm to the tree to get its fruits, though in differing degrees. The remaining were better type of individuals who desired to have their object fulfilled without destroying the generating parts of the tree. The fourth one wanted
to cut the twigs that had fruits; he is of yellow thought-paint. The next one wanted to pluck the fruits only and eat them; he has got pink thought-paint. The last man wanted to eat only the fruits that had fallen down. He did not want to do any harm to the tree and he was therefore the best man with white thought-paint.

The different thought-paints thus exhibit the inner activity of the mind showing that the means to be employed to achieve the ends vary with the mental and moral characteristics of each individual. What then are the characteristics of a person with black thought-paint? He is wrathful, always hostile, wicked, violent, unmindful of the consequences of injuring six kinds of living beings, devoid of piety and compassion, uncontrollable, unprincipled, slow, lacking in common-sense, unskillful, given to sensual pleasures, proud, deceitful, mischievous, lazy and mysterious. The person with the blue thought-paint is extremely sleepy and deceitful, ignorant, rude, wicked, careless, intensely greedy towards worldly possessions and riches, engaged in sinful undertakings and easily irritable. The person with the grey thought-paint is irritable by temperament, talks ill of others, boastful, troublesome, morose, frightful by nature, envious, insults others, crooked, vile, heretical, jealous, dishonest, distrustful, indifferent, vainglorious, unmindful of loss or gain to others, desires to die on the battle-field, generous to flattery and indiscreet in his actions.

The three kinds of good men have varying thought-paints.

- The person with the yellow thought-paint knows what to do or not to do, dutiful, steady, knows what is fit or unfit for enjoyment, is free from anger, pride, deceit and greed, self-controlled, impartial, compassionate, charitable, calm and gentle. Gentler qualities characterise the person with pink or red thought-paint: charitable, kind, benevolent, ever ready to do good to others, humble, steadfast, well disciplined, restrained, forbearing, devoted to saints and teachers and strives after the highest good. The person with the white thought-paint is impartial, engages in meditation to the Law (dharma) and Truth, not desirous of enjoyment of any kind,
practises samitis and guptis, subdues his senses, calm, free from passions and detached from worldly affairs.7

These thought-paints change according to the degree of change in the purity of mind and thought. These changes bring in twenty six kinds of variations in the six thought-paints.

It should be clear from what has been said above, that the Leśyās are different conditions produced by the influence of different Karmas; they are not therefore dependent on the nature of the soul but on the Karmas which accompany it. What produces Leśyā is therefore the subtle substance of Karmic matter. That is why the Leśyās have colours, tastes, smells, touches, degrees, character, variety, duration, effect, etc.

The black, blue, grey, red, yellow and white Leśyās have, respectively, the colour of a rain-cloud, of a blue ākāśa or sky, the colour of a pigeon, of vermillion, of ophthalm and of flowing milk. Their tastes are, respectively, more bitter than the fruit of neem-tree, more pungent than Trikaṭua, sourer than that of unripe mango, infinitely better than that of honey, and infinitely better than that of milk or pounded milk. The smell of the first three bad Leśyās is infinitely worse than that of the corpse of a cow, dog or snake; while the smell of the three good Leśyās is infinitely more pleasant than that of fragrant flowers and of perfumes when they are pounded. Touch of the first three is infinitely worse than that of a saw or the tongue of a cow while that of the last three is infinitely more pleasant than that of cotton, butter or sirīsa flower.8

Since the thought-paints vary with the intensity of passions and the activities, their presence and the degree of colouration would depend upon the stage of spiritual development of each individual. Even a wrong believer in the first stage can have white thought-paint, if his passions are very mild while a right believer in the fourth stage may have black thought-paint, if he is actuated by strong passions. Only the white thought-paint is formed in a person who has attained any of the stages of spiritual
development from the 8th to 13th. No thought-paint is possible as there are no vibrations in the 14th stage. As it is the fruition of the Karmas that gives rise to imperfect dispositions, it must follow that purging of Karmas necessarily brings about a change in the thought paint. That is why the scriptures mention that there is the presence of white colouration in the case of the omniscient and those whose passions are subsided or destroyed. The question of white colouration in the omniscient is only from the conventional point of view considering the previous disposition: but in reality, there is no colouration in the omniscient owing to the absence of activity.

In dealing with the fourteen ways of search (mārgaṇaṣṭhānas) for the causes of modifications of the Jīva into different states of existence, the modifications suffered by Jīvas have been examined from the point of Leśyā in the first part of the Śaṭkhaṇḍāgama. The Jīvas are possessed of six kinds of Leśyās which are the result of the yogic activities actuated by the passions. It has been stated that the six categories of Leśyās can be judged according as the passions are most intense, more intense, intense, mild, milder and mildest. The state where there is absence of Leśyā is Aleśyā. From the Leśyās, it is possible to understand the moral and spiritual condition of a Jīva. The first three Leśyās are regarded as signs of sinfulness while the last three as auspicious.

It would be evident that the Jaina thinkers have studied with utmost care and intelligence the two subjects of passions and colouration (Leśyā). The interaction of passion and activity in attracting the Karmic matter causing it to assume different paints or colours has been discussed with convincing details. How the smell, taste, touch and colour vary with the intensity of emotional activity has been illustrated by a simple example. This is a significant contribution in the field of psychology by the Jaina thinkers. That the changes in colouration take place due to the degree of intensity or mildness of emotional activity is accepted by modern psychologists. The soul, in its pure condition, is free from Karma. The impact of Karmic matter actuated by thought-activities and passions is as wonderful as it
is mysterious. Knowledge of this doctrine will lead to a correct understanding of the pure nature of the soul and the deleterious effects of inauspicious Karmanas. Kundakunda has stated that is is from the practical point of view that the thought-paints occur in the soul till it reaches the stage of spirituality and that the souls which are liberated from the cycle of existence are free from colour, etc.  

The importance of this doctrine in the practice of different kinds of meditation has been noted by Jinabhadra. He mentions, like other Jaina authors on Yoga, that there are four kinds of meditation: depressed (ārta), violent (raudra) religious (dharmya) and white (sukla). What are the moral and spiritual qualities of an individual practising each of these four types of meditations has been referred to by him, during the course of his discussions. A person desirous of engaging himself in meditation has to concentrate his mind on one subject and free it from all distractions. Concentration is a mental process and there must be eradication of distracting activities. There are persons whose minds are full of worldly miseries: while there are others whose intentions and inclinations are wicked, revengeful or harmful. The thought-paints of these persons would be black, blue or dove-grey only differing in degree as to their intensity. Delusion, attachment, aversion and perversity would mark their activities. For one engaged in violent meditation, the three kinds of inauspicious thought-paints would be more or less in the superlative degree. In persons engaged in the last two kinds of meditations, thoughts would be auspicious and their minds would be progressing gradually towards spiritualism until there is realization or insight into the real nature of the soul. In the sukla-dhyāna, there will be stability of mind, freedom from delusion, discrimination and non-attachment to the body or other worldly objects. Naturally the thought-paints in an ascetic who has reached this stage would be white.

The Ajivikas who followed the doctrines of Makhali Gosāla also recognise the theory of Karma and thought-paints. Gosāla,
however, followed a peculiar course in the interpretation of the doctrine. According to him the Buddhists or their Bhikṣus were of the type of blue-class as there were amongst them preachers of ease who favoured the ways of comfort. The Niganthas were regarded as being of the type of red-class as they had renounced the comfort. They were, however, regarded as inferior to Ajivika in adhering to the loin-cloth. He classified his lay adherents as of the type of yellow-paint and his staunch adherents as of the white type.\[1]

Buddhism also classified Karma in terms of colours: black, white, mixed black and white and not black and white. It does not seem to accept Karma as a subtle form of matter of minute particles. The Yoga school has adopted the same classification. Dasgupta suggests that the idea of black and white Karma in Yoga philosophy was probably suggested by the Jaina view.\[15]

Jainism does not propound that the soul itself becomes coloured by the Leśyās. The Leśyās are primarily associated with the Karmic matter whose reflection on the soul may be likened to the reflection of a coloured flower or object on a white crystal. It is interesting to mention that the Theosophists have also a theory of colouration related to passions and thought-activities. They say that there are three mortal bodies: the physical, the astral and the mental. The development of the astral body (sūkṣma ārūra) differs enormously in different persons; it is this body which yields the experience of pleasure and pain, which is thrown into action by passion, desire and emotion, and in which reside the centres of our sense organs of sight, hearing, taste, smell and touch. If the passion, desire and emotion are low, sensual and animal, then its matter is coarse; its vibrations are consequently and comparatively slow, and its colours are dark and unattractive—brown, dark red and green and their combinations, lit from time to time with flashes of scarlet. The meaning of colours on the astral bodies, the pictures of which are said to have been drawn by an artist, to the descriptions given by clairvoyant investigators, has been
explained thus: brown-red indicates sensuality and greed; grey-green indicates deceit and cunning; brown indicates selfishness; scarlet on left of head indicates anger; yellow round the head indicates intelligence; grey-blue above the head indicates primitive religious feeling...; touches of deep rose colour indicate beginning of love. As evolution goes on, the matter becomes finer and the colours clearer, purer and more brilliant...; In a developed astral body, green indicates sympathy and adaptability; rose indicates love; blue indicates religious feeling; yellow indicates intelligence; violet above head indicates spirituality.\textsuperscript{16}

It is possible to interpret the Leśyā theory in terms of modern psychology, especially of parapsychology. The bhāva leśyā has a psychological significance. It is an aura created round the soul due to psychic effects and yoga. It is dependent upon the activity of the mind. The six primary colours are effects of the Karmic influx arising out of mental states and events. Every psychosis brings some after-effects which are both physical and psychic. It is possible to show, by proper analysis and investigation, that psychic phenomena exist and are detectable.\textsuperscript{17}

In passing, I may mention that some scholars have opined that Mahāvīra borrowed this doctrine of Leśyā from Gosāla. There is no substance in this view. The Karma doctrine is an integral part of Jainism; it has been developed by the Jains on a scientific basis and forms the very backbone of Leśyā. It is a question of inheritance of common idea current in the Śramana schools.
Bibliography and References


5. *Ibid.* Verse 493


Compendium of Jainism

Ramachandra Rao, Oriental Research Trust, Madras and Bangalore. (1971)


CHAPTER IX

THE SEVEN PRINCIPLES (Tattvas)
(Karma theory continued)

In his poem entitled "Starting from Paumanok" Walt Whitman, the great American poet says:

"Was somebody asking me to see the soul? See, your own shape and countenance, persons, substances, beasts. The trees, the running rivers, the rocks and sands."

He seems to accept the theory of Karma due to which an individual soul might take its birth in various states of existence. The Karma doctrine is a fundamental part of Jaina philosophy, as it appears to be of most other religions; but nowhere, if our sources and their knowledge are comprehensive enough, has the physical nature of the Karman been asserted with such stress as in Jainism. The doctrine has been developed with a minuteness in detail, careful classification and precision in statements. The conception has been most realistic and does credit to the most methodical modern system. These details can be seen in the voluminous commentaries on the 'Dhavalā' and the 'Jayadhavalā', which are found summarised in the 'Gommaṭasāra' referred to above.

It is necessary to remember that according to Jaina Metaphysics, the Universe is divided into two everlasting, uncreated, and independent categories of substances: Jīva (the soul) and Ajīva (non-soul). The link between the soul and non-soul is Karma. Mention has already been made of the characteristics of
the soul and how it becomes entangled into the subtle refined particles of Karmic matter. The nature and kinds of Karmas have been the subject-matter of the previous chapter.

Seven Principles

Umāsvāmi has defined Right Faith as firm belief in the true nature of the principles. Right faith arises from innate disposition or by acquisition of knowledge. 1) The soul, 2) the non-soul, 3) influx, 4) bondage, 5) stoppage, 6) gradual shedding and 7) liberation constitute the seven principles or realities.

Āśrava or Inflow of Karma

In view of the previous discussion of the real characteristics of the first two principles viz., the soul and the non-soul, we may proceed to discuss the third principle of Āśrava or inflow of the Karmas into the soul. Āśrava is that process through which the Karmic matter enters the soul. Etymologically, the word Āśrava in Jaina philosophy means the influx of the matter into the soul, though the Buddhists use its corresponding word in Pali ‘āsava’ as being synonymous with ‘kleśa’ meaning sin, passion, depaivity or corruption. Āśrava results from the activities of the body, mind and speech. The Jaina usage is nearer the etymological meaning of the term and obviously more original.

Āśrava is of two types: bhāvāśrava and dravyāśrava. While the former is concerned with the thought-activities, the latter is concerned with the influx of the Karmic matter itself. The causes of the former are the activities of the of the five senses like impure attachments. This may be likened to entry of water into a boat through a hole when the boat is floating over water. Dravyāśrava is the matter which is grasped by the impure thought-activities and is made to attach to the soul. The Bhāvāśrava is classified into five categories: mithyātva (delusion), avirāti (lack of control) prāmāda (inadvertence), yoga (activity) and kaśāya (passions).

Each of these Bhāvāśravas has its own sub-divisions. Mithyātva is of five kinds: ekānta, viparīta, vinaya, samśaya and
ajñāna. Ekānta Mithyātva is that kind of false belief which is cherished as true without either verifying it with others or without examining its correctness. Beliefs are accepted as true because they are current in the family or society. The second kind of Mithyātva is that belief which is either perverse or accepted as true along with similar other beliefs. Persisting in the belief even after knowing it to be false is Vinaya Mithyātva. Where the mind becomes indecisive about the truth or otherwise of a belief, or, where a person loses faith in the correctness of a tenet, we have a case of Samśaya Mithyātva. The last kind of Bhāvāsrava Karma is due to want of knowledge or absence of faith. One who suffers from this infirmity does not use his reason or is incapable of forming any definite idea.

Avirati (lack of control) is also of five kinds: hiṁsā (injury), anṛta (falsehood), caurya (stealing), abraham (incontinence) and parigrahaṇkha (desire to possess which is not needed). These five Aviratis are equated with avratas or vowlessness.

Pramāda or inadvertence is also of five kinds: Vikatha is reprehensible talk about any individual, state, organization, king, women, etc. Kaṣāya is of four kinds: anger, pride, deceit and greed. Indriya or the five senses are liable to commit inadvertent acts of various kinds. Nidrā or sleep, where it is unnatural may be the source of careless mistakes. Rāga is the fifth kind of pramāda; it is the result of attachment to different worldly objects.

Yoga refers to activities of the body, mind and speech which are of various kinds like true, untrue and mixed.

Kaṣāyas comprise anger, pride, deceit and greed. These vary according as they are mild, intense or great. Mention has already been made in previous chapter of No-kaṣāyas.  

Kundakundācārya has referred to identical causes of inflow of Karmas in Chapter V of his 'Samayasāra': Wrong belief, vowlessness, passions and the vibratory activities are the causes of influx of Karmic matter which obscure the qualities of the soul. These mental conditions and passions begin to operate in
a person who has neither firm knowledge nor belief. Influx commences with impure or wrong thought or speech activities. Passions form the impelling forces unless they are controlled by right belief, knowledge and conduct.

**Bandha or Bondage**

How does the inflow of Karma bind the soul? The process is illustrated by giving the example of a person who has fully smeared his body with oil and stands out in the open where there is wind. It is natural that particles of dust should stick to the body of such a person. Similarly when a soul is rendered weak by various kinds of thought-activities, it gives room for the particles of Karmic matter to enter. It is the invariable process that the Bhāvāsravas or the thought activities are the direct and proximate causes of Dravyāsravas or influx of matter. The conscious state by which Karma is bound with the soul is called the Bhāvabandha while the interpenetration of the Pradeśas of Karma and the soul is Dravyabandha.⁶

It is the conscious state of mind that binds the Karma with the soul when the latter is excited by any of the causes like passion or aversion, mentioned above. Bandha is also of two kinds: Bhāva-bandha and Dravya-bandha. Bhāva-bandha is alliance of the soul with the mental activities which are the result of excitement, passion, wrong belief, etc. It is stated in the 'Vardhamāna Purāṇa' that modification of consciousness consisting of attachment or aversion by which the Karmas are tied to the soul is known as Bhāva-bandha.⁷ Dravya-bandha is that bondage which results from the union between the soul and the interpenetrated Karmic matter. Bandha implies necessarily the assimilation of matter existing in many pradeśas by the soul. On account of differences in the vibrations in the soul-activity, the Karmic molecules enter and become one and stay with the pradeśa of the soul. They come in infinite numbers every moment, to each soul.

Umaśvāmi first states that wrong belief, non-abstinence, passions and activities are the causes of bondage. According to him,
bondage takes place when the individual self, actuated by passions, attracts particles of matter which are fit to turn into Karma.\(^9\)

Commenting on this verse, Pûjyapâda states: "Just as the digestive fire of the stomach (the gastric fluid or juice) absorbs food suitable to it, so also the self attracts Karmas of duration and fruition corresponding to the virulent, mild or moderate nature of the passions. Owing to the potency of wrong faith, etc. the self, possessed of incessant activity in all states, attracts subtle matter of infinite space-points pervading the same space points occupied by the self, capable of turning into Karmic matter, which then is combined by interpenetration with the space-points of the self. This is bondage. Just as the mixing of several juices of barley, flowers and fruits in a vessel produces intoxicating liquor, so also, matter present co-extensive with the self becomes transformed into Karmic matter owing to the presence of activities and passions".\(^10\)

The bondage of Karma is of four kinds according to its prakrti (nature or type), sthiti (duration) anubhâga (intensity) and and pradeśa (mass or quantity of space-points).\(^11\) Mention has been made of the fact that there are eight kinds of Karmas like Jñânâvaranîya, Darśânâvaranîya, etc. and that they are responsible for obscuring the four qualities of the soul and for determining the four conditions of life, including creation of obstacles. Naturally, therefore, there must be difference in the nature of the each kind of the eight Karmas. It must follow as a corollary that the bondage must be of various nature.

The second variety of bondage pertains to the sthiti or duration of each of such Karmas. The duration of the bondage must be co-extensive with the duration of the Karma itself. The duration is dependent upon the time taken for shedding it off. The duration of the bondage and its intensity depend upon the intensity of the passion. The stronger the passions, the greater is the length of duration and fruition of the bondage. While this is so with regard to the inauspicious Karmas, in the case of auspicious Karmas, the intensity of the fruition is less. The greater is the depth of an inauspicious Karma, the greater is the suffering, may
be for years beyond conception. The duration is measured in terms of sāgaropama years. The minimum length may be any unit of a muhūrtta (48 minutes). The gradation of intensity falls into four groups. If the intensity of the fruition of an auspicious Karma is great, the enjoyment is also great.

While discussing the nature of bondage, mention has been made of anubhāga (intensity). The results of the Karmas, suffering in the case of inauspicious Karmas and enjoyment in the case of the auspicious ones, may be mild, great or intense. This depends upon the passions and activities which produce the Karmas. Diversity in the bondage is the direct result of the degree in depth of the operation of the Karma. Anubhāga is conceived as divisible into infinite number of indivisible parts which cannot be further divided. Each one of such indivisible parts is called indivisible unit avibhāga-paringcheda. Even the single atom of an aggregate of Karmic matter (Karma-skandha) possessed of the least intensity has an infinite number of such infinite units.1

The fourth variety of bondage is pradeśa or the quantity of space-points that the Karmas interpenetrate. Since bondage results in the existence of the soul and Karma in unison, we speak of Pradeśa. When there is an incessant influx of Karma into the soul, the latter attracts the matter which occupies the space of the soul. Since the extent of bondage is with reference to the space occupied in the soul, the bondage is called Pradeśa-bandha. The space in the universe is filled with Karmic matter and the soul attracts only such number of particles as are wafted into by the activity of passion. The quantity of matter attracted may be of eight main types, as there are eight types of Karmas.

Samvara or Stoppage of Influx

Samvara or stoppage of the influx of new Karmas is the first significant step in the process of liberation of the soul from Karma. Samvara is the opposite of Āśrava; it is so called as it prevents the entry of Karma into the soul. Umāsvāmi has given
a precise definition: "Obstruction or stoppage of influx is Samvara". It is the harbinger of spiritual development that closes the entry for new Karmas.

Just as Ášrava is of two kinds, viz., Bhāvāśrava and Dravyāśrava, there are also corresponding kinds of samvara: bhāvasamvara and dravyasamvara. Freedom from attachment and aversion stops the influx. Bhāvasamvara can be brought about by various means. Since the activities of the body, mind and speech as also the passions are the causes of the influx of Karmas, Samvara can be achieved only by controlling them. There are accordingly many varieties of Bhāvasamvara: vrata (vow), samiti (carefulness), gupti (restraint), dharma (observances), anupreksa (reflection), parisahajaya (conquest over troubles) and cāritra (right conduct).

Continuing the earlier simile, if the entry of water into a boat through a hole is to be stopped, the hole must be plugged. If the wind is blowing in through the window, the window must be closed. This is the common-sense remedy. The same principle applies to stoppage of influx of new Karmas. If the influx is to be stopped, the activities which cause it must be stopped. If the passions are the cause, they must be subdued. Many of the Karmas are due to wrong belief. When a person is in a state of delusion or in the grip of a passion, he will not know what is good for the soul. He becomes deeply involved in attachments of the world and afflicted with miseries of various kinds.

This kind of involvement or bondage can be stopped by purifying the mind, body and speech which give rise to various activities leading to influx of Karmas. Similarly the passions must be subdued by right belief and self-restraint.

It therefore follows that the means or Samvara or stoppage have to be sought through the eradication of activities and conquest of passions that bring the influx of Karmas. The five vows or Vratas are: non-violence, truthfulness, abstinence from stealing, celibacy and abstinence from too much accumulation of worldly objects. These five rules of conduct are called pañcasūtras in Buddhistic
ethics. The observance of these vows will put a stop to many of
of the evil propensities of the five senses and check the rise of
of passions.

Samitis are of five kinds. They enjoin carefulness and restraint on conduct and behaviour.  İyi—samiti consists in the exercise of care while walking. It requires the use of only that path which is trodden by men and beasts. The use must be in a manner as not to cause any harm or injury to any creature like ants or insects. Bhāṣā—samiti requires exercise of carefulness in talk. The speech should be gentle, useful and beneficial. Harshness, rudeness, satire, bitterness, etc. ought to be eliminated from our talk with others. Esāṇa—samiti requires observance of care in receiving alms so as not to contravene other rules of conduct. Āḍāṇa—nikṣepa requires exercise of care in receiving and keeping things necessary for religious exercises after examination of the place on which they are to be kept. The last one is Utsaraga—samiti. It requires one to be careful in the choice of a place for answering the calls of nature or throwing out other discharges in. One ought to choose an unfrequented place free from insects, etc.

The Guptis are restraints relating to activities of the body, mind and speech. One has to be careful while walking or otherwise moving the body. That is Kāya—gupti. Vag—gupti requires the exercise of restraint over the tongue. One has to be restrained in speech so as not to utter words will hurt others. The third one is Mano—Gupti which requires mental restraint. One should not allow the mind to wander over subjects which are harmful or unhealthy.

Dharma is religion requiring observance of ten virtues or rules of conduct. They are necessarily qualified by the term uttama to distinguish them from what is ordinarily understood. It brings out the superior nature of these virtues. They are: Uttama Ḍṛṣṭa or supreme forgiveness, Uttama Mārdava or supreme humility, Uttama Ārjava or supreme straight-forwardness, Uttama Satya or supreme truthfulness, Uttama Śauca or
supreme purity or cleanliness, Uttama Saṁyama or supreme restraint, Uttama Tapas or supreme penance, Uttama Tyāga or supreme abandonment, Uttama Akincinya or supreme possessionlessness and Uttama Brahmacarya or excellent celibacy. These are the ten rules of conduct which are intended to bring about purity of mind, cultivation of restraints and development of spiritual outlook. Each of the virtues has to be cherished and observed to the maximum extent in thought and conduct. It may be further mentioned that supreme penance is of two kinds: either internal or external. External penance relates to fasting, control of diet sitting or lying down in solitary places and practising other bodily austerities. Internal penance consists of repentance, reverence, study of scriptures, relinquishment of worldly objects and thoughts, and meditation. Since the ten virtues are of great importance, they will be dealt with later in full detail.

Anupreka or reflections are of twelve kinds: i) Anityānupreka is the reflection that all things in the world are transitory; (ii) Asaranānupreka is reflection that nothing can give to us refuge and peace in the world except true knowledge of the self; (iii) Samsārānupreka is reflection that the cycles of worldly existence are endless; (iv) Ekatvānupreka is reflection that the man is all alone in this world and is the architect of his own fortune; (v) Anyatvānupreka is reflection that the soul is different from non-self or body; (vi) Aśucitvānupreka is reflection that all things except the pure soul are unclean in the world; (vii) Āśravānupreka is reflection about the influx of Karman; (viii) Saṁkarānupreka is reflection about the means of stopping the influx of Karman; (ix) Nirjarānupreka is reflection about the means of getting release from the Karman which have already accumulated; (x) Lokānupreka is reflection about the real nature of the universe and the substances that comprise it; (xi) Bodhidurlabhānupreka is reflection on the difficulty of getting enlightenment in the world about the path to liberation; (xii) Dharmānupreka is reflection on the nature of true religion and its essential principles.
Partṣaha-jaya is exerting to get victory over twenty-two kinds of troubles. (1) Kṣudhā is victory over the pangs of hunger; (2) Pīpāsā is victory over the troubles of thirst; (3) Śīta is victory over the troubles and effects of cold; (4) Uṣṇa- is victory over the troubles of heat; (5) Darśamaśaka is victory over the troubles of bites of mosquitoes, bugs, etc.; (6) Nāgnya is victory over the feelings of shame arising as a result of nakedness; (7) Arati is victory over the feeling of dislike or dissatisfaction; (8) Strī is victory over the mental disturbances at the sight of women or their movements; (9) Carya is victory over the feelings of fatigue and distress due to wandering on foot; (10) Niṣadyā is victory over the desire to move from the fixed place of meditation or the inconvenient pains caused thereby; (11) Sayā is victory over hardships arising as a result of sleeping on bare ground or absence of a bed; (12) Ākroṣa is victory over feelings of anger that may be caused by the behaviour of others; (13) Bādhā is victory over the troubles caused by the disturbances or ill-treatment by others; (14) Yācanā is conquest of the desire to beg for anything even when badly needed; (15) Alābha is victory over dissatisfaction of troubles due to failure to failure to get alms; (16) Roga is conquest over the pains or suffering caused by a disease; (17) Ṭha is conquest over pain and suffering caused by pricking of thorny shrubs; (18) Mala is conquest over the feeling of dissatisfaction or disgust due to dirt or uncleanliness of one’s own body; (19) Satkār is victory over the desire for getting respect and eulogy; (20) Praja is conquest over conceit of knowledge or learning; (21) Ajña is victory over the feeling of despair and shame on account of one’s own ignorance; and (22) Ādarsana is conquest over despair and sadness arising out of one’s failure to realise one’s own ideal after leading a life of piety and observance of austerities. These are the twenty-two kinds of troubles or hardships which one must conquer in order to maintain equanimity of mind and save oneself from the effects of pain and sadness due to various situations and matters of every-day life.

The seventh means of Bhāva-saṁvāra is right conduct (Cārita) which is of five kinds: (1) Sāmāyika is equanimity
resulting from self-absorption and observance of the five vows; (2) Chedopasthāpana is recovery of equanimity of conduct after repenting for lapses arising out of negligence and inadvertance; (3) Parihāra-Vişuddhi is purity obtained from non-injury to living beings; (4) Sūkṣma-sāmparāya is conduct free from all passions except that of greed; (5) Yathākhvāta is conduct which is free from all passions which have been subdued. It is present in beings who are in the 11th to 14th stages of development.13

It is clear from what has been stated above that stoppage results when there is spiritual development from various points. It is the activities and passions that lead to transmigration. Their cessation naturally leads to psychic stoppage or Bhāvāśraya. A check on activities and conquest over passions stop the influx of Karmic matter, that is, results in Dravya-samvara.

The root-cause of all evil is wrong belief and the rise of passions which lead to endless mundane existence, and lack of self-restraint. They hinder higher stages of spiritual development. Stoppage is brought about by control of the activities of body, mind and speech. One ought to regulate oneself in normal activities like walking, eating, sitting and sleeping so as to avoid injury to minute organisms. A regular and meticulous practice of the ten virtues or duties awakens the inner consciousness of purity of thought and action. The various types of reflections discussed above are helpful in cultivating mental and spiritual qualities of the highest order. They open the vast vistas of real knowledge about the self and the transitory nature of the material world. They clear our delusions and free us from attachments of all kinds, personal and material. Contemplation over the miseries of mundane existence enables us to distinguish the real from the unreal. In this transient world, the ten virtues alone stand out as our real guides and philosophers. To reflect on the self as separate from the body convinces us that the latter is only a receptacle of impurities. Constant devotion to religion and the practice of rules enjoined by it can create a barricade against the new Karmas.
Afflictions ought to be endured to make us unshakable in our faith. Those who face different kinds of afflictions with equanimity will not swerve from the paths of truth and ahimsā. In order to stop the influx of fresh Karmas, observance of external and internal austerities is essential. Expiation, contemplation, pious services to the ascetics and the members of the fourfold community, study of scriptures and renunciation are all the means of acquiring internal purity.

Nirjarā

When the influx of new Karmas is stopped in the manner discussed above, a question naturally arises as to what happens to Karmas which have already infiltrated into the soul? The process by which the Karmas are made to fall off is called Nirjarā. In one sense it is destruction of the Karmas. When the disappearance of Karmic matter takes place after the fruits of the Karmas are enjoyed or suffered, there takes place what is called Bhāva-Nirjarā; it may take place due to penance also. The destruction of Karmic matter itself is known as Dravya-Nirjarā. Nirjarā is therefore of two kinds.16

The fruition of Karmas is either involuntary or by deliberate efforts (Sakāma or Akāma). Certain Karmas of beings in the four states of existence fall off after they are suffered or enjoyed for the period of their duration or maturity. Dissociation by conquest through exertion of one's own efforts is of the second kind.

Umāsvāmi has stated that dissociation of Karmas takes place by penance or austerity also.17 He has dealt with Samvara and Nirjarā together in some of the sūtras since the same austerities, conquests, regulations and religious practices are both conducive to stoppage and to release as the case may be. Ascetics and spiritually developed human beings practise various kinds of austerities and religious practices which result in the disappearance of the Karmas even before their fruits are enjoyed. Since Nirjarā takes place without the enjoyment of their fruits, it
is called avipāka-Nirjarā. From another point of view, when the Karmas are made to fall away by exertion and penances, the Nirjarā is called sakāma or intentional Nirjarā. Some Karmas have their period of maturity or enjoyment fixed. After the lapse of the period when the Karmas are enjoyed or suffered, they disappear of their own accord. This is called savipāka Nirjarā.

The soul regains its purity after the Karmas have fallen off either due to enjoyment or destruction. Kundakunda Ācārya has dealt with this subject in verses 144 to 146 of the Pañcāstikāya. According to him, a person who has practised a number of austerities and observed rules for the purification of his activities, will be able to shed away many of his Karmas. The austerities are both internal and external. A person who understands the real nature of the self and the futility of attachment to objects of the world will have right knowledge and thereby acquire the ability to destroy the Karmas due to his purity of thought and action. He alone will be able to cast away his Karmas who on account of his right knowledge contemplates on the self with full concentration.

Kundakunda has emphasised the importance of right belief in shedding of Karmas. Right belief creates an awareness of the transitoriness of the worldly objects, checks the operation of passions and does not create entanglements by way of new attachments. The activities of thought of such a person would be pure and will not tend to forge new bondage of Karmas. Right belief connotes and means a right outlook of the soul. There is a firm conviction about the destructive and debilitating nature of the Karmas and hence they are countered by the vibrations of righteousness born of right belief. Such a person knows that both pain and pleasure are due to bondage of bad or good Karmas. He is always on his guard and ever conscious of his pure self. He realises that the nature of his soul is pure knowledge and his true path is one of liberation. A person who is not a right believer remains ignorant, perverse and indecisive about the true nature of his self. He therefore indulges in such thought-
activities as relate to mundane affairs. A right believer is content with his own right knowledge which brings him peace and happiness. It is only the wrong believer or an ignorant person that will indulge in sense-gratification and consequently in the accumulation of material possessions which feed his passions. A right believer is free from seven kinds of fear; fear of life, of the next life, of helplessness, of losing what he possesses, of pain, of accident and of death. A right believer is always steadfast in his beliefs and firm in his convictions.

The force which right belief, right knowledge and non-attachment generates becomes the cause of premature shedding of Karmas. The pursuit of self-absorption results in shedding Karmas by thoughts (bhāva-nirjarā) from which results Karmic shedding (dravya-nirjarā).

Mokṣa or Liberation.

The seventh principle is the principle of liberation. The soul becomes liberated when there is complete annihilation of all Karmas as a result of the absence of the cause of bondage and the shedding away of Karmas from the soul. While discussing the Karma theory, it has been noted that there are eight kinds of Karmas: four Ghāti Karmas and four Aghāti Karmas. The destruction of the four Ghāti Karmas, viz. Jñānāvaramīya, Darśanāvaramīya, Mohanyya and Antarāya, results in bhāva-mokṣa of the soul. The destruction of the four Aghāti Karmas takes place when a being is in the last stage of development known as yogi. There is perfect liberation when there is destruction of all the Karmas in their entirety.

According to the Jaina thinkers, the whole universe comprises of Jīva and Ajīva. The soul is pure and perfect with infinite knowledge, bliss, etc., but from beginningless time, it has already been in association with the Karma. The bondage between the soul and Karma which is a kind of subtle and fine matter is brought about by the activities of the body, mind and speech.
Due to these activities and passions, the soul gets bound with different kinds of Karmas, becomes responsible for different states of its existence and suffers endless births and deaths. The soul is master of its own destiny. The causes of entanglement of Karmas and means of getting liberated have been laid down with scientific accuracy.

The attainment of complete freedom from Karma by the soul is liberation or Mokṣa. Since Mokṣa is the goal of every living being, the subject will be discussed later in a separate chapter.
Bibliography and References

1. Glasenapp: *Doctrine of Karman in Jaina Philosophy with Introduction* by Zimmerman, PP. ix–x
   Edited by Hirala R. Kapadia.
   The Trustees, Bai Vijibai Jivanlal Panalal Charity Fund, Bombay–2.

2. Jain, S. A.: *Reality (Tattvarthasutra)* Chap. 1, Sūtra 2
   Vira Sasana Sangha, 29 Indra Biswas Road, Calcutta–37.


5. Ibid. PP. 75–7.

6. Ibid. Verse 32.


   Central Jaina Publishing House, Ajitasrama, Lucknow.


10. Ibid. PP. 217–8.


    Jaina Cultural Research Society, Benares–5.


CHAPTER X
THE NINE PADARTHAS OR FUNDAMENTAL TRUTHS

The key-note of Jaina metaphysics consists in its emphasis that the universe is reality comprising the two substances Jīva and Ajīva, that is, the living beings and the non-living beings or the matter. Ajīva is a comprehensive substance which is subdivided into pudgala, dharma, adharma, ākāśa and kāla. The Jīva and the Ajīva together, as already explained, from the basis of the seven principles. A through understanding of the seven principles is the pre-requisite of Right Knowledge and Right Faith. Since the soul is associated with Karma from times immemorial, a knowledge of the real Self, of the processes of liberation and of the nature of the ultimate goal to be realised is indispensable for a successful living leading to liberation. Many souls migrate from one life to another because of the erroneous identification of the soul with the non-soul which generates numerous illusory attachments with the surrounding objects and persons.

A person deluded by wrong knowledge claims kinship with all material objects and becomes oblivious to the real nature of his self. The pure qualities of his soul become obscured. The process of the inflow or influx of Karmic matter into the soul and its bondage have been discussed under the scheme of Seven Principles in Jaina philosophy. If Pāpa (sin) and Punya (merit) are added to the seven principles, we have the nine Padārthas.

Thus it has been stated by Kundakunda that Jīva, Ajīva, Punya, Pāpa, Āśrava, Samvara, Nirjarā, Bandha and Mokṣa are
the nine Padārthas. It is difficult to find a precise equivalent for the word Padārtha, though Mrs. Stevenson has designated the nine padārthas as "The Nine Categories of Fundamental Truths."

While dealing with the seven principles, reference has been made to auspicious and inauspicious thought as the originators of Karma. Puṇya and Pāpa are the two kinds of Karmas which are generated by good and bad thoughts respectively. Puṇya results from activities of such thoughts as are good, or occasioned by a happy state of mind. Pāpa results from activities which are caused by delusions of different kinds, anger and hatred. They are respectively the causes of auspicious or inauspicious Karmas. Puṇya is the result of auspicious thoughts of the mind while Pāpa is the result of the inauspicious thoughts; both the kinds of thoughts, being pudgala in nature, assume the form of Karmas. The fruits of these Karmas which flow into the soul are experienced through the senses or the life as pleasure or pain. Even though the soul has no form, due to the viscosity and dryness of the Karmas, the Pāpa and Puṇya get absorbed into the Karmic matter binding the soul. That is how the new bondage of auspicious and inauspicious Karmas takes place.

Since every kind of Karm is of two kinds viz. Bhāva Karma and Dravya Karma, Puṇya and Pāpa Karmas are also of two kinds.

The influx of Puṇya Karma takes place when the thought-activities are actuated by love, compassion and purity. One who has devotion towards the Arhats, the Siddhas and the saints and respect the teachers will have the proper kind of affection or love. That man can be called compassionate who feels sympathy for the thirsty, the hungry, the afflicted and the miserable. Such thought-activities result in Puṇya.

The causes of inauspicious Karmas are due to the disturbances of the mind by anger, pride, infatuation and greed. That person who has a cunning face, indulging in sensuality and speaking ill of
others or scandalising others incurs Pāpa. Hence on account of indulgence in sensual pleasures, distressed and angry state of mind and wicked propensities, three kinds of Lasyās of the bad type are formed.

In common with all other religions which recognise the theory of merit (Punya) and demerit (Pāpa) the ethical doctrines of Jainism have laid down that thoughts and actions which are conducive to the well being of others or of oneself are meritorious and that those which are transgressions of the prescribed code result in demerit or Pāpa.

Punya has been defined as that which purifies the soul or tends towards its purification. It is Karma (pudgala) in nature; its fruits being pleasure and happiness in the material world, it is also a helpful means to attain spiritual progress. It is the righteous thoughts and deeds that assist in the formation of right faith, cultivation of self-restraint and development of inner power. Most of the worldly possessions like wealth, power and health are the fruits of Punya. It is Punya that trains the mind to conform to religion.

The observance of the five vows, austerities and other religious practices leads to auspicious thoughts (bhāva punya) and auspicious deeds (dravya punya). Various kinds of charities are recognised as being conducive to merit. Performance of charity is an item of daily duties enjoined on a house-holder. Dāna, gift or charity of food, medicine, accessories (upakaraṇa) and shelter is enjoyed by the sacred books. While giving charity, the donor must have a pure mind, a pure body and pure speech. He must take into account the fitness of the donee for receiving the charity. His attitude must be free from ill-will, dejection and condescension. His mind should be joyful and free from desire for worldly rewards. Accessories refer to articles like clothes, bowls to mendicants and peacock bunches to ascetics. Apart from the four kinds of charity, there are other charities like imparting learning, giving protection to the helpless etc. Special significance is attached to expenditure of one's wealth for giving in
charity idols of Jinas, construction of temples, distribution of sacred books to the deserving, alms to the members of religious orders and to the laity.

Nine kinds of *Punya* are mentioned by Muni Suśīla Kumār viz. food (giving of food), drink (giving of water to the thirsty), shelter, bedding, clothes, entertaining good thoughts, sweet speech, physical service to others and salutation. Special preference in giving charity, and rendering services is to be given to the Jaina ascetics and to the followers of the Jaina faith.

Fruits of *Punya* are of various kinds: birth in higher states of existence, birth in a respectable family, freedom from want, possession of all kinds of wealth, sound body with beauty and impressive personality, freedom from diseases of any kind and birth that ensures spiritual progress.

*Pāpa* or demerit is that which brings misery or unhappiness to oneself as a result of one's thought, speech or action. All sentient beings feel the pain of their sins. There are thirteen kinds of activity; sinning 1) for one's interest, 2) without personal interest, 3) by slaying, 4) through accident, 5) by an error of sight, 6) by lying, 7) by taking what is not freely given, 8) by mere conceit, 9) through pride, 10) through bad treatment of one's friends, 11) through deceit, 12) through greed, and 13) actions referring to religious life. In addition to the aforesaid activities, thirst for hoarding and accumulating property, engaged in protecting what is acquired by greed, enmity and hatred towards others, sensuality and sexual craze, engaging in conflicts, quarrels and wars etc., blaming and scandalizing others, irritability and wrong belief etc., also attract inauspicious Karmas. Committing breach of any of the five vows, and acting under any of the passions result in sinful consequences. The duration of the inauspicious Karmas depends upon the intensity of the passions. It is the sins that obscure the qualities of the soul and produce deformity of mind and body in the next life even.

The first twelve kinds of activities are self-explanatory. The thirteenth kind of activity has reference to religious life. A
monk who controls himself for the benefit of his soul, walks carefully to avoid harm to creatures, is gentle in his speech, careful in religious exercises, leads a chaste life, guards himself against all evils, does not incur sin and acquires such Karma as will be destroyed after sometime.

Persons acquire merit if they abstain from undertakings and possessions, practise righteousness, are of good character and morals, abstain from killing and commission of wicked actions causing pain to others. Monks and other revered persons who observe all vows fall in this category.

In everyday life, people love merit (Pūnya) because it brings in pleasure and worldly happiness: they hate demerit (Pāpa) because it is the cause of pain. Really speaking, pleasure and worldly happiness is not welcome because every moment of sense-gratification enhances our craze for further enjoyment. A gold fetter binds a person as much as an iron one. Similarly auspicious or inauspicious Karma arising as a result of good or bad deeds binds the soul. From the real point of view, both merit and demerit lead the soul into cycles of births and rebirths, though they may bring about different states of birth or differing environments of happiness and misery.

A wise right believer should therefore refrain from accumulating Karmas of either kind and should have an eye on liberation of the soul by contemplating on its real qualities. In the lower stages of spiritual development, the mind and senses would be easily attracted towards pleasures and inclined towards performance of good deeds to earn merit. Yet constant devotion towards the Tīrthankaras, engaging oneself in the service of the saints, study of scriptures and adopting an attitude of introspection repenting for wrong acts etc will gradually prepare the mind for spiritual advancement. A seeker after liberation should know that both good and bad deeds produce Karmas that bind the soul; he should therefore cultivate an attitude of detachment with right knowledge and faith, and free himself from the operation of Karmas.
The importance of clear knowledge of the true teaching of the nine fundamental truths lies in the fact that it paves the way for liberation. A spontaneous comprehension of the true nature of the soul and the damage that both merit and demerit do to it will wean the individual from their influences and turn attention towards higher considerations of the self. A firm conviction in this law of cause and effect will assist the individual in subduing all passions like love, hatred, delusion, pride, etc. Right knowledge depends upon devotion to these truths. Wrong or perverted knowledge and belief lead to wrong paths which are far away from the path of liberation. These nine principles establish the undoubted responsibility of the individual for what he is and what he is going to be. Spiritual evolution is a conscious and deliberate process and has to be pursued with unstinted devotion.

Any one pondering over the nine Padārthas will realise how important it is to know that the pure soul is subjected to all the travails of transmigration due to its attachment with the Karma and how by right knowledge and belief one can prevent the accumulation of new Karmas and destroy the old and new ones by following the path of liberation. They solve the riddles of life and point out that the key to the attainment of perfection lies within each individual.
Bibliography and References


4. Muni Suśila: *Jaina Dharma* (Hindi) P. 85. All India Svetambara Sthanakavasi Bhavan, 12 Harding Road, New Delhi.


CHAPTER XI

GUNA-STHANAS OR
FOURTEEN STAGES IN THE SPIRITUAL
EVOLUTION OF SOUL

"The high goal of our great endeavour is spiritual attainment, individual worth, at all cost to be sought and at all cost pursued, to be won at all cost and at all cost assured."

— Robert Bridges

Since the goal of all ethics and philosophy is to help an individual to attain spiritual excellence or perfection, it is essential to know what hinders him in realizing his ambition. Every soul, pure and serene, becomes sullied by the influx and assimilation of Karmas due to wrong belief, laxity of self-control and activities of the mind, body and speech actuated by passions. The energies thus generated render the soul impure and subject it to all kinds of infirmities. The shackles of Karma, whether of gold created by Punya or of iron created by Pāpa can be broken not merely by purging the soul of its old Karmas but also by stopping the inflow of new ones.

The moral and spiritual discipline prescribed by Jainism involves a graduated course of training and has therefore to be followed step by step. The sages have therefore divided the path which leads to salvation into fourteen stages, each of which represents a particular state of development, condition or phase of the soul, arising from the quiescence, elimination, or partial
quiescence and partial elimination of certain energies of Karma, and the manifestation of those traits and attributes which are held in check by their activity. The fourteen Gunasthānas classify these attributes and characteristics consistently with the gradual evolution towards the goal.

The order of the Gunasthānas is logical and not chronological. The succession in which they are to pass differs with each individual, because relapses can throw the Jivas down from the arduously attained height and can, wholly or partially annul the development achieved till then. This becomes easily comprehensible, if we call to our mind the fact, that remaining on one stage may last only a few minutes, so that in the morning one can be on a high level, sink down from it at noon, and climb up again in the evening. This is an internal and spiritual process, not observed from outside. The different possibilities of the succession of the Gunasthānas are conditional upon the process which leads to the attainment of the samyaktvas and upon the two ways, by which the method of reduction of Karma can be brought about.⁹

The psychical condition of the soul due to the rising, settling down, perishing, or partly settling down and partly perishing, of Karmic matter (udaya, upāśama, kṣaya, kṣayopāśama) is called Gunasthāna.⁹ It is a matter of common experience that we come across numerous living beings which belong to different stages of understanding due to ignorance (avidyā). These states are due to the difference in state of existence before the commencement of development. We are often confronted with a situation where some souls are aware of the need to shed the Karmas, while some others have an indistinct vision of the need. An awakening is created only when the soul becomes conscious of what is hindering it in its advancement. There are three things which have to be subdued or eradicated: the mass of Karmas, their intensity and duration. It is the adequacy of spiritual effort that determines the subsidence of these aspects of the Kaumra.
The fourteen stages of spiritual evolution have been enumerated in verses 9 and 10 of Jīva Kānda of Gommaṭaśāra. They are: 1) Mithyātva (delusion), 2) Sāsādana (downfall), 3) Miśra (mixed). 4) Avirata Samyaktva (vowless right belief), 5) Deśavirata (partial vow), 6) Pramatta-virata (imperfect vow), 7) Apramatta-virata (perfect vow), 8) Apūrva-karaṇa (new thought-activity), 9) Anivṛtti karaṇa (advanced thought activity), 10) Sūksma Samparāya (slightest delusion) 11) Upaśānta Moha (subsidal delusion), 12) Kṣiṇa Moha (delusionless), 13) Sayoga Kevali Jina' (vibrating omniscient conquerer), 14) Ayoga Kevali (non-vibrating omniscient). These should be known as fourteen spiritual stages in the order enumerated. After the last stage, the soul becomes liberated. The fourteen stages have been designated on the basis of the prominent thought activity at each succeeding stage of evolution. We shall deal with each of them in the same order.

1) Mithyātva (Delusion)

This is the stage when a soul is affected by wrong belief due to the deluding or inflating Karmas. It is the stage of false belief or conviction. Such a person does not believe in the right path. He does not believe in reality and the values of truth and goodness. On the other hand, he sticks to wrong beliefs, and the right beliefs are unpalatable to him. Such a person will not believe in the seven principles. His beliefs are one sided, perverted, doubtful, false or indiscriminate. The consciousness of the soul in this state is obsessed with ignorance.

Jainism is based on reason and logic. In the five aforesaid mental states, there is some belief or the other. There are people who believe in wrong practices and superstitious creeds. When a soul is involved in such wrong beliefs, the person becomes perverted. The loss of faith is due to the recurrence of the kaśāyas whose subsidence is essential to the manifestation of the insight. Truth has no meaning or value to him. A wrong believer does not believe in the noble doctrines preached by the Jinas. This is a stage of spiritual blindness which is due to the Darśanā-
varaṇiya-karma. A wrong or perverted believer is like a blind man who does not see what is good and beautiful or what is bad and ugly.

2) Sāsādana (Downfall)

The downfall is from right-belief. When the error-feeding passions (anaṃtabandhis kaśāya) destroy the right belief, the soul falls down from a stage of higher spirituality or from the summit of right belief due to the Karmas, faces wrong beliefs and gets lost in the wilderness of wrong beliefs. This is known as Sāsādana.

This stage, which is otherwise known as Sāsādana samyak-dṛṣṭi, contemplates a fall from the stage of right faith. A person may attain the stage of right faith by instruction and right understanding. But if he is overcome by passions or wrong thought-activity, he may slip down from the upper rung of the ladder to which he might have climbed. During this downfall, the soul has neither right belief nor wrong belief. In this stage, the soul is said to have operative thought-activity (andayika bhāva). This is a transitory stage but the evolution has to commence again by destruction of the deluding Karma.

3) Samyak-mithyā-dṛṣṭi (mixture of right and wrong beliefs)

This is a stage in which a person holds right and wrong beliefs mixed together. It is due to indecision or a wavering state of mind, indicating spiritual oscillation between right faith and wrong faith. Such a person neither sticks up to right belief nor gives up wrong belief. This is also a transitory stage. If the right faith revives as a result of Puṇya or fresh knowledge received from a preceptor, the person may march to the next higher stage; or the soul may as well revert back to the stage of wrong belief.

In all the first three stages the destructive Karma (ghāṭī) is still present but it is a question of degree. The right belief is not destroyed but is clouded by wrong belief. The mixed thought
activity cannot be split up into two parts just as it is not possible to separate the sugar juice from the curds when both are mixed together. This mixed stage is wavering, impure and unsteady; it is however a cause of the destruction of Karmas. In the mixed stage, there is no bondage of age-karma because death is due to the age-karma already binding the soul and re-birth in a particular state is already bound to the soul when it is born.  

4) Avirata Samyaktva (vowless right belief)

The soul in this stage possesses right faith and also knowledge of truth and falsehood; but it is not capable of observing the vows (rules of self-discipline) due to the operation of partial-vow preventing passions (aprtyakhyāṇāvarana kaśāya). The right faith in this stage is of three kinds: i) Upāsama samyaktva: it may arise in a soul, which had never any right belief before, as a result of the four passions which create erroneous beliefs and wrong beliefs. Right faith may awaken after it had become deluded as a result of the Karmas. It might as well be that a soul has already right belief and may advance further by destroying the kinds of Karmas as are responsible for beliefs of the kinds mentioned in the first three stages. It is possible that a soul may slip down to the three lower stages for one antara muhūrtta; if there is no fall, it might advance to the second kind of right belief. ii) This is called Kṣayopama-samyaktva. This is a stage where the operation of right faith is slightly clouded by wrong belief, as at the third stage. The four passions are practically destroyed and are in partial subsidence. iii) Kṣāyika samyaktva: This stage of right belief arises as a result of the destruction of the four kinds of passions and the deluding Karmas. This is the best kind of right belief and the soul which acquires it must progress further.

In this stage, the soul has faith in the mokṣa-mārga i.e., one's spiritual career, culminating into liberation, complete freedom from Karma, but is not able to pursue it observing all the rules of discipline. It believes in the doctrines propounded by the Jain scriptures but is sometimes affected by wrong instructions of ignorant teachers. Such a soul recovers from the wrong
belief on understanding the satisfactory exposition of the tenets by the right kind of teachers; if it does not, it slips into wrong beliefs.

In this stage, the person possesses the right belief but not the conduct in strict conformity with it. He has not bound himself by vows to abstain from indulgence in sense-enjoyments (indriya-samyama) and from hurting the living beings (prāna-samyama). He is compassionate, calm, fearful of mundane existence (sāṁvega) and truthful. He does not hurt anybody without provocation. He is able to control excessive passions of anger, pride, deceit and greed. He is prone to these passions in moderate degrees, but he has faith in the right doctrines.

5) Deśa-virata (Partial vows)

A person in this stage is able to exercise greater degree of self-control than the one in the previous stage. This stage is called the stage of partial vow because due to the operation of vow-preventing-passions (pratyakhyātāvarāna kaśāya), there is the absence of perfect control. There is the partial destruction and partial subsidence of the Karmas binding the soul due to passions. Here, there is the operation (udāya) of that kind of karmic matter which forms such passions as prevent the vows only partially. The person in this stage has the necessary spiritual disposition and exerts for further development. He observes the rules of Right Conduct only partially due to lack of complete control. This is a stage where, apart from the spiritual progress, emphasis is laid on conduct, that is, observing those rules which are enjoined by the scriptures. It is here that the eleven Pratimās get included.

Since he is right believer, he will control his passions and not commit unnecessary sins. He will not kill the mobile beings. He would not also unnecessarily kill the immobile beings. Since he is wholly devoted to the Jina, he is both vowful and vowless (virata-avirata). This is so because if he kills the mobile beings, he would be a person without faith in the teachings of Jina.
6) Parmatta-virata

In this stage, the person has right faith and exerts to follow all the rules of conduct. Even though the thought activity is one of destruction and subsidence of almost all the karmic matter, yet the observance of the vows in a perfect manner is prevented due to the operation of the little karmic matter and of the minor passions which have escaped destruction. The sarajvalana kaśāyas are passions that prevent the perfect-right-conduct from attaining perfection. They are anger, pride, deceit and greed. The nokaśāyas or minor passions which similarly cause obstruction are nine: laughter, indulgence, ennui, sorrow, fear, disgust, inclination towards women (stṛ-veda), inclination towards men (puruṣa-veda) and inclination towards the neutre (napumāsaka-veda). It is on account of these passions which still remain undestroyed fully that there is carelessness or imperfection in the observance of the vows. Hence the name pramāda or careless error in virata (vow). There is effort on the part of the person to control himself in his observance of the vows, but he is hindered by desires and impulses as the renunciation of attachment to worldly objects is not complete. This is virtually the stage for an ascetic.

A saint or an ascetic in this stage possesses all the twenty-eight essential primary qualities (mūla-guṇas) which a saint even in the lowest stage possesses. He performs his usual duties like teaching, preaching the scriptures, reading and writing books and looks after the discipline and conduct of his pupils. Carelessness may occur by way of censurable talk relating to women, food, politics, or the king, or control of passions, sleep and attachments, that is moha and sneha (delusion and affection). The conduct of a Muni in this stage is remarkable for its absence of negligence.

7) Apramatta-virata

The soul of a person who has reached this stage of spiritual development is free from the infirmities of the 6th stage and is absorbed in spiritual contemplation. When the perfect-right-
conduct-preventing Karma (samjvalana) and the minor passions are suppressed there arises the quality of non-carelessness and the soul reaches the stage of perfect vow (apramatta samihyata). He is absorbed in contemplation but is not able to rise higher as the Karmas etc., are not wholly destroyed. This stage of stagnation at the same stage (seventh) may last for one antaramuhurta and may fall down to the 6th stage. In the second stage (śreni) of ascent, the purity of the thought-activity of the soul increases at every instant and may rise to the level of purity which might have gone up.

This is a very vital stage of spiritual development. Here onwards there would be two ways of progress: one is where the Karmas and minor passions are merely pacified or suppressed (Upaśamaka śreni); while the other is kṣapakaśreni where the Karmas are annihilated. Undoubtedly the soul has acquired strength due to cessation of all attachments and thorough control over the body. There is full self-control and there is not the slightest negligence in the observance of the vows etc., without any kind of transgression.

8) Apūrva-karana

This stage is called the apūrva-karana because the spiritual development of the soul leads to attainment of new thought-activities which had not been reached before. All the souls that have reached this stage of development are not uniform in the degree of purity of thought as they might reach the stage at different points of time. The new thought-activities would be mainly concerned with the destruction or subsidence of the right-conduct-deluding karmas. These souls are free from the bondages of karmic matter of sleep (nīdā) and drowsiness (pracala) and are therefore capable of bringing about the subsidence of right-conduct-deluding karmas. The age (āyu) karma is still operating. The soul delights in checking or destroying the consequences of streaks of passions that might arise at times. This is the stage of pure contemplation; it is otherwise called śukla-dhyāna or white contemplation. This is a stage where the soul acquires the unique
physic force which was never experienced before and assists in the destruction of the Karmas. This is accessible to souls which are either in the upaśama śrenī or in the state of pacification of Karmas (kṣapaka śrenī) or the state of destroying the Karmas. The conduct is perfect and the soul is capable of engaging himself in holy meditation.

9) Anivṛtti karaṇa

In this stage, the soul acquires advanced thought-activity. Each instant only one thought-activity operates. On account of the purity and fullness of concentration, the thoughts work like the flames or fire and consume the forest of Karmas. The advance in thought-activity and its purity is uniform. The soul either brings about the subsidence or destruction of all the 21 sub-class of passions, and right-conduct-deluding-Karma with the result that gross desires and emotions are overcome.

A person who has reached this stage has conquered all his desires for enjoyment of what he saw, heard or ate. He practises meditation on the true nature of the soul.

10) Sūkṣma samparāya

This is a stage of slight delusion of the five kinds of knowledge-obscuring Karmas, four kinds of perception-obscuring Karmas and five kinds of obstructive Karmas. By his meditation, the person acquires the strength to subdue or destroy even the subtlest of Karmas. A subtle desire to obtain mokṣa still persists. An unconscious attachment for the body still remains, though there has been great spiritual advancement of the soul. There is a slight tinge of passion of greed. The thought-activity is either subsidental (upaśamaka) or destructive (kṣapaka).

11) Upaśānta Moha

This is a stage where the delusion (moha) or the kaśāyas have subsided due to the pure thought-activity, like the limpid waters of a pond in a cold season as all the muddiness would
have settled to the ground. This is the upāsama śrenī or the subsidential stage of the ladder reached by a soul which is advancing further up. This śrenī is not required to be passed through by a soul which has reached the śreni of destructive ladder. Since the soul is in a stage where the Karmas have subsided but not destroyed, it is quite likely that the soul may descend to the lower stage when the passions rise again. In other words, the bhāvas or the psychical conditions produced by the suppression of the infatuating Karmas may change and lead the soul back on reappearance of the Karmas. The soul at this stage is chadmaśtha, that is, enveloped by the influence of Karmas other than the deluding Karmas. The attachment is also suppressed. The soul does derive pleasure on account of the suppressed Karmas and hence its stay at the stage is one antaramuhūrta at the maximum. The person acquires the power to destroy the mohaniya Karmas which have not been destroyed altogether.

12) Kṣīṇa Moha

In this stage, the saint who is possessionless (nir-grantha) would have destroyed all his deluding passions. The thoughts are as clear as water kept in a pure vessel of crystal jewel. When a soul has reached this stage, the thought-activity purifies the body, transforms it into a highly refined one (paramā-udārika) and progresses towards the destruction of other ghāṭiya Karmas: viz. Jñānavarāṇiya, Durājanāvarāṇiya and Antarāya since the Mohaniya Karma is already destroyed. This is a stage where passions have been annihilated. The distinction between this stage and the former is that in the latter stage the soul is at the stage of subsidence while in the former stage, it has reached the ladder of destruction. It stays for one antara-muhūrta and marches forward to destroy all the four Ghāṭi Karmas.

13) Sayoga-Kevalin

From the previous stage, the soul advances to reach this stage of omniscient being who has yet to destroy the four Aghāṭi Karmas; that is why it is a stage of a Kevalin and sayoga (with
activity). The activities of the body, mind and speech still continue to exist. Here the soul becomes the Arhat or perfect soul in human body. The soul appears bright like the sun freed from the clouds and attains full knowledge of the universe. Ignorance has been destroyed and the soul attains the stage of Paramātman by acquisition of nine kinds of purified thought-activities arising as a result of destruction of Ghātī Karmanas. The nine Kevala-labhās are: 1) Kṣayika jñāna is purified or perfect knowledge due to the destruction of knowledge-obscuring Karman. 2) Kṣayika darśana is perfect cognition due to the destruction of Darśanāvaranīya Karman. 3) Kṣayika dāna is perfect charity due to destruction of Dānāntarāya Karman. 4) Kṣayika lābha is perfect gain due to the destruction of lābhanāntarāya Karman. 5) Kṣayika bhoga is perfect enjoyment of consumable objects due to the destruction of Bhogāntarāya Karman. 6) Kṣayika-upabhoga is perfect enjoyment of non-consumable objects due to the destruction of Upabhogāntarāya Karman. 7) Kṣayika vīrya is perfect power due to the destruction of Vīryāntarāya Karman. 8) Kṣayika sannyakta is perfect right belief due to the destruction of Darśana-Moha. 9) Kṣayika cāritra is perfect right conduct due to the destruction of cāritra-moha.7

As already stated, this is a stage of spiritual perfection, still associated with body, mind and speech. The Arhanta Paramesṭi who is engaged in propounding the Dharma to all living beings is an example of Sayoga Kevali.8

14) Ayoga Kevali

This is the stage of final liberation when the vibrations of the holy body cease, as the yoga of body, mind and speech are discarded. This is the stage of Siddha, a stage of transcendental perfection. The Omniscient Lord of this stage is one who has fully stopped the influx of Karmanas after having destroyed those already attaching and who has put an end to vibratory activity.9 The soul is wholly free from the eight kinds of Karmanas and has attained its true state of blissfulness which is ever-lasting. The soul abides
at the summit of the universe, having been fully liberated. The
abode is called Siddhaśilā; there the fully liberated souls live in
purity and peace.

Now it may be of interest to general reader to recapitulate
the logical manner in which the spiritual development or evolution
takes place from the state of ignorance to that of perfection. In
this vast universe, there are infinite number of souls some of
which are invisible to our senses. Roughly speaking, the souls
may be divided for our present purpose into two classes: bhavya
in whom there is an awakening to its potential qualities and
abhavya in whom there is no such awakening. The arrangement
of the Gunasthānas is not artificial but scientific. The principal
cause of liberation is the subjugation of the activities of the body,
mind and speech accompanied by internal tapas.

Naturally the journey of evolution starts from the stage of
ignorance and wrong belief. This is the first stage where the
individual is possessed of perverted and superstitious beliefs. He
is blind to the truth that the soul is different from the body and
considers that his bodily pleasures and material acquisitions are
the end and aim of life. The second stage is not really one of
development. It is the halting place for souls which have slipped
down from the higher stage on account of Karmas or there is a
slight indistinct awareness of right belief in a soul otherwise in a
state of wrong belief. The third stage is one of wavering between
right belief and wrong belief. The mind gets glimpses of right
faith but does not cling to it long. The individual oscillates in a
state of wrong cum-right belief. The fourth stage is one where
the individual has acquired the right faith. This is undoubtedly
a stage of development as the individual would be becoming
conscious of right knowledge and right conduct. He has not
developed self-control as there has been neither subsidence nor
dissociation nor annihilation of the passions and vision-deluding
Karmas. The first four stages are thus concerned with the develop-
ment of the individual from that of a wrong-believer to that of a
right believer, though without self-control.
The next three stages from the 5th to 7th relate to steps in the evolution and development of full self-control. The individual having acquired right belief in the 4th stage struggles to gain mastery over his passions and acquires partial self-control. He passes on to the next stage with his partial self-control; he exerts to acquire full self-control but often fails in his efforts due to negligence. He is sometimes swayed by passions and emotions and he remains in a state of spiritual inertia. The march into the 7th stage marks his success in acquiring self-control. The spiritual inertia of the earlier stage does not confront him. There is spiritual strength to master the infirmities of the body. The further progress depends upon the ability of the individual to subdue or annihilate his Karmas. The spiritual heights to be reached by the subsidence of a Krama is certainly lower than that to be reached by the destruction of the Karmas.

The 8th stage heralds the commencement of pure contemplation for greater purity of the soul. The Karmas are eradicated and subdued and due to the purity of soul, intensity and duration of the Karmas are shortened. The influx of new Karmas becomes quite limited. This is therefore a stage of very great purity of the soul. Then the individual steps into the 9th stage where he tries to conquer his grosser emotions and desires. With the success achieved, he ascends to the higher stage, that is, the 10th stage where the spiritual war waged is against greed or the subconscious attachment to the body. The 11th stage is reached when the individual is able to vanquish the Karmas by suppressing them. Just as a suppressed enemy is likely to rise again, so there is the chance of reappearance of passions and emotions with a probable descent to the tenth stage. The 12th stage represents the stage of complete destruction of all passions. When the soul goes to the 13th stage, it would have destroyed all the Ghāti Karmas and attained omniscience. The final or the 14th stage is reached when even the Aghāti Karmas are also destroyed and the soul reaches the stage of Siddha.

It may be added that the spiritual height which a layman or house-holder can reach would be the fifth Gūṇasthāna which
contemplates partial renunciation of the world. Right faith, Right knowledge and Right conduct are the three jewels whose full realization helps the individual on his path of liberation. The earliest stages of the journey are necessarily those which mark the transition from the state of settled wrong convictions to the acquisition of true faith. The remaining Gunasthānas are the landmarks on the path of progress in respect of Right conduct. The eighth and ninth stages are also characterized by increased meditation, hence, concerned with the advancement of knowledge, but to follow the teachings of the Siddhānta on to the still higher rungs of the ladder, it is necessary to remember that perfection in conduct means neither more nor less than the attainment of the state of desirelessness, which is possible only with the complete eradication of all those traits which spring from desire.

Following table is gratefully borrowed from Sri C. R. Jair as it brings out the main features of the fourteen stages of Gunasthānas very clearly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Name of Gunasthānas</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mithyātva</td>
<td>Gross ignorance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sāsādana</td>
<td>Vanishing faith i.e., the condition of mind while actually falling down from the fourth to the first stage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Miśra</td>
<td>Mixed faith and false belief.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A viratasamyagdrṣṭi</td>
<td>Right Faith, unaccompanied austerities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Deśavirata</td>
<td>Commencement of Right Conduct.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pramatta</td>
<td>The formation of the āhāra, śarira and observance of vow</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
though tinged with pramāda (carelessness or laziness). This is the first stage of life as a muni, i.e. of homelessness.

7. Apramatta

Elimination of pramāda, and partial realisation of the svābhāvika ānanda, i.e., joy.

8. Apūrvakaraṇa

Noted for the new channels of thought thrown open by the purification of mind and the quiescence of the elements of disturbance.

9. Anivṛtti

More advanced thought-activity, i.e., meditation.

10. Sūkṣma

Only very slight greed left to be controlled.

11. Upāsānta moha

Quiescence of the remaining traces of greed.

12. Kṣīṇa moha

Desirelessness i.e. the complete eradication of greed, hence perfection in Right conduct.

13. Sayoga kevali

Omniscience, hence the perfection of Right knowledge, and the realisation of the state of jivan-mukti that is liberation in the embodied state. In the case of Tirthankaras revelation also takes place in this stage.

14. Ayoga-kevali

The cessation of the activity of three yogas, i.e. the channels of āśrava. The next step takes one to Nirvāṇa.
Bibliography and References


5. *Ibid*, Verse 30


Chapter XII

Ratnatraya or the Three Jewels

Most of the individuals start their journey of life from the stage of mithyātva (wrong belief) in which they are born. Wrong belief is the greatest enemy as it shuts out an individual from understanding the true nature of his self and makes him believe that the body and all that appertain to it in this material world are real, that the real happiness lies in making accumulations that make for a comfortable living. This type of living encourages vowless ways of life, with no self-control self-restraint. Even where there is inclination towards a life of restraint, normal knowledge of the various vows which regulate life on the right path appears to be beyond comprehension.

There are great foes that attack us during the course of our journey. The passions are the most powerful enemies that deprive us of our spiritual riches and reduce us to a state of poverty. The activities of the body, mind and speech are beset with many hurdles which add to the existing burden of Karmas. Every individual who becomes aware, however vaguely, of the purity of the self would be anxious to know more about its nature and inquisitive to acquire the necessary knowledge for realizing his end.

The central subject of every philosophy is the Paramātman who is called by different names and is described as possessed of different attributes. Jainism, as already discussed, does not believe in God as an almighty creator of the universe. Godhood is an
ideal, a pure perfect soul whose attributes are infinite perception, knowledge, power and bliss; it is the condition of perfection and omniscience. Imperfection attached to the soul as we see in the universe is due to its association with Karmic matter. Our joys and our sorrows, our friends and foes, our kith and kin and in short, all that mundane life stands for are of our own making, the fruits of Karmas that we accumulated in the past arising out of our own passions and activities of body, mind and speech.

How do we attain the state of purity and perfection? In describing the path to salvation or the mokṣa mārga, each school of philosophy has emphasised that aspect which its propounders considered important. While some have emphasised the path of faith or devotion, others have emphasised the path of knowledge as supreme. There is a third school which has laid the greatest stress on action or conduct. Jainism has considered the problem from two points of view viz. Vyāvahāra-nāya (practical standpoint) and Niścaya-nāya the point of Reality). For most of us it is difficult to understand the point or the language of reality unless it is first explained from the practical point to which we are normally used, having regard to popular expressions and similarity of experiences or objects. The practical point of view is normally related to popular view and understanding. The exposition of the true reality may sometimes transcend our experience and understanding as well.

Umāsvāmi haṣ, in his inimitable aphoristic sūtra, stated:

Samyag darśana jñāna cāritrāṇi mokṣamārgah.1 “Right faith, right knowledge and right conduct together constitute the path to salvation.” The word samyak used therein qualifies not only faith but also knowledge and conduct. These three principles are called the Ratna-traya or the Three Jewels by the Jaina thinkers. The works of the great saint Kundakunda, particularly the Niya-masāra deals with it in full detail. The “Three Jewels” form the subject-matter of the Puruṣārtha-siddhyupāya by Amritacandra Ācārya. In fact, every Jaina scripture deals with this subject as it sums up the philosophy of liberation or omniscience. It also
makes it clear that those who are devoid of conviction in the efficacy of the path have no hope of progress.

It is necessary to say a word about the precedence given to faith over knowledge. One can argue that knowledge must precede faith as otherwise faith will be blind faith and as right faith can only be based on knowledge. Though faith and knowledge might arise in a soul simultaneously, faith must precede it as it is the originator of desire to pursue knowledge. A firm conviction is an incentive for pursuit of knowledge. Faith itself implies a desire for removal of doubts and other illusory factors that disturb the mental equilibrium of the individual. It gives a direction and meaning to acquisition of knowledge and moulds the conduct.

If we consider the meaning and content of the three-fold path from the point of reality (niscaya-naya), we must admit that the omniscient soul itself is possessed of all the attributes. Such pure and perfect soul is free from Karmic bondage and is untouched by any impurity of physical matter. The soul is all blissful and free from all vibratory activities. The pure soul itself is right knowledge. An individual's right faith and right conduct are centred in such soul. Such a soul is also the object of contemplation and self-absorption.2

The pure soul is omniscient and hence is able to visualise the mysteries of the universe and fundamental truths that guide the course of life. All the scriptures are based on what was expounded by the omniscient Tirthanākaras. Unless a living being makes these scriptures the basis of life and conduct, there can be no real happiness. That is why it is said that the three jewels are, from the point of reality, centred in the pure soul itself.

In everyday life, a person who wants to acquire wealth by serving a king, must believe in him, know his powers and wealth, and conduct himself in such a way during the course of his entire service as will help him in the realization of his worldly object. So in reality, the pure soul should be known to be the king, should be fully believed in as the embodiment of the attributes of all
perfection and should be realized by contemplation of and concentration on its nature.  

It is only from the practical point of view that the three-fold path is required to be pursued by an embodied soul so that the body which is a mass of subtle karmic matter would cease to be a hindrance in the attainment of perfection.

**Right Faith**

To start with, it is necessary to discuss the meaning of right faith. Ācārya Samantabhadra has defined it to mean belief in the meaning of the principles, the Āpta or the Arhat, the sacred scriptures and the pious saint free from three kinds of superstitions, eight angas and eight kinds of pride.  

God according to the Jaina conception, as already discussed, is pure and perfect soul, the omniscient with infinite knowledge and bliss. Umāsvāmi has defined right faith as belief in the true nature of the substances as they are (Tattvārtha śraddhānam ānyag darśanām). A firm belief in the nine fundamental truths (padārthas) is considered to be the pre-requisite for right knowledge and conduct.

Belief in the vitarāga or the Conquerer, the scriptures, the nine fundamental truths and the preceptor must be free from doubts and ignorance. Amongst the mundane souls, right faith can arise only in beings which are samanaska (possess a mind) and whose passions are not dominating. There are beings who identify the soul with the body and are unable to overcome the false beliefs cherished by some members in society.

An average mind is clouded by three kinds of superstitious beliefs: belief in false gods (devamūdhatā) false belief in the holiness (lokamūdhatā) and belief in and respect for dubious ascetics (pākhandi mūdhatā). The first kind of superstition consists in believing in gods and goddesses who are credited with passionate and destructive powers willing to oblige the devotees by grant of favours they pray for. The second relates to taking baths in certain rivers, jumping down the peaks of mountains
and entry into fires under the supposition of acquiring merit for
themselves or for their kith and kin. The third belief refers to enter-
tainment of false ascetics and respecting them hoping to get some
favours from them through magical or mysterious powers exercised
for personal gain or show of power. The mind must be freed
from such superstitions and doubts so as to clear the ground for
rise and development of right faith.

Besides freedom from three kinds of false beliefs (mūḍhatva),
the mind has to be free from eight kinds of pride: 1) pride of
family (kula-mada), 2) pride of contacts and family connections
(jñāti-mada), 3) pride of one’s own strength (bala-mada),
4) pride of beauty (sundarātā-mada), 5) pride of knowledge
(jñāna-mada), 6) pride of wealth (dhana-mada), 7) pride of
authority (ājñā-mada), and 8) pride of penance (tapaḥ-mada). All
or any one or more of these kinds of pride are likely to
disturb the equilibrium of mind, and create likes or dislikes for
men and matters. In such a case, the mind cannot be unbiased.
The understanding is likely to be erroneous, if not perverted. An
inflated notion of oneself on any of these grounds is likely to
cloud the vision. It is therefore necessary that before right belief
could dawn, there should be an effacement of these factors of
pride.

Right faith is characterised by eight aṅgas (aspects) which
determine its excellence; they are: 1) one should be free from
doubt about the truth or validity of the tenets (niḥśāṅkitā);
2) one should have no love or liking for worldly enjoyment as
everything is evanescent (Nikāmksitā); 3) Nirvicitksitā-āṅga
consists in declining to have an attitude of scorn towards the body
even though it is diseased and is full of impurities, as it can help
in the cultivation of the three jewels; 4) amūḍhadṛṣṭi is freedom
from perversity and superstition. One should not pursue wrong
and heretical faiths; 5) upagūhana requires one to maintain
spiritual excellence and protect the prestige of that path when it is
faced with the risk of being belittled on account of the follies and
shortcomings of others. One should praise the pious but not
deride those who may be faltering in their pursuit of religion: vi) sthitikarana-angā is the quality of rehabilitating others in the path of right faith or conduct by preaching them or reminding them of the religious truths, whenever they are found to be going astray; vii) vātsalya-angā is showing affection towards co-religionists and, respect and devotion towards the spiritually advanced by receiving them with courtesy and looking after their comforts; and viii) prabhāvanā consists in weaning people from wrong practices and beliefs by establishing to them the importance of the true religion by arranging religious functions and charities; one should endeavour to demonstrate the greatness of the Jaina tenets and scriptures.

These eight āṅgas (organs or members) or vital consituents of right faith require the individual to be thoroughly free from doubts about the real attributes of the Omniscient- the scriptures and the preceptors. They require him to follow the path with devotion and clear understanding of the possible pitfalls. While attaining spiritual excellence himself, he should do nothing by deriding his companion travellers who may be going astray. He should bring them to the right path by advice and persuasion. He should do nothing that will bring discredit to his religion. He must protect his co-religionists from scandal whenever they might go astray by educating them in the true tenets. Pious and meritorious persons ought to be respected and treated with devotion so that he himself might have occasion to ponder over their virtues and others might be influenced by their spiritual conduct. One should also, by the best of one's own capacity spread the tenets of the Jainas by precept and example.

Amītacandra Sūri has pointed out the kind of doubts which might beset a mind in the attainment of firm belief of the right kind (samyag-darśana). Doubts arise as a consequence of our limitations in understanding or may be induced by our friends and neighbour following other faiths and extolling the merits of their own faiths. When the mind is in a state of cogitation, miseries and calamities may add to our mithyātva as interested persons
would be advocating the prowess of false gods and goddesses as the relievers of human miseries by offerings and worship. These are occasions for testing the firmness of one's own faith in the immutability of the law of Karma.

Since our capacity for comprehension is limited, we have to accept many things in life on trust. Even in ordinary life, we find persons with different attainments in various subjects. Religion and spiritualism have to be pursued with effort and assiduity and there can be no advancement in our studies unless we start with a few beliefs in matters like the omniscients and their attributes as laid down in the scriptures. This does not mean that a relevant inquiry is prohibited. It is common experience that things which are beyond comprehension go on clearing themselves up as we progress in our studies and processes of thought. Doors of knowledge do not open to all of us and all of a sudden. Study with devotion clears all clouds and new vistas of light dawn on a dedicated student. Sometimes, doubts are dispelled by our teachers and the enlightened; it is thus that new light illumines the dark corners of our minds making visible what was invisible earlier.

The doctrine of Anekānta or many-sided approach to each and every matter requires us to examine it from various angles to find out the truth. Metaphysical problems are difficult in their very nature. We ought to inquire with an open mind and should not rely upon fallacious doctrines and scriptures.

A belief motivated by reward cannot be a right belief. A true believer will not expect to be born in a royal family or to attain of power and wealth. All such matters are the fruits of Karmas of the individual concerned. One should not also feel disgusted with the natural conditions of life like hunger, poverty, disease, dirt, etc., but should strengthen one's belief in the divinity of the soul. Practices of ten virtues without giving room to the play of passions is the way of developing samyaktva. These ten virtues are: supreme forgiveness, supreme compassion, supreme straight-forwardness, supreme purity, supreme truth, supreme self-control
supreme austerities, supreme charity, supreme non-attachment and supreme chastity. Our effort should be towards self-improvement; indulging in scandalizing others trying to pick holes in them is unhealthy and inconsistent with right attitude. Deviation from the path of righteousness can be prevented by conquest of passion and acquisition of more knowledge.

Since samyakāya forms the foundation of ethics according to Jainism, the Uttarādiḥṭayayana Sūtra which is one of the oldest Āgamas according to the Śvetāmbaras has briefly indicated the sources through which the same could be acquired and cultivated. They are ten: nisarga is spontaneous effort of the mind to comprehend the nature of the soul and the principles connected with it in mundane life. Upadeśa (advice), ājñā (precepts given in the scriptures), sūtra (study of the ōṅgas and other sacred books), bija (learning through logical inferences from what is known), abhidharma (comprehension of meaning of the sacred lore), vistāra (extensive study), kriyā (practice of the rules of conduct), samākṣepa (brief exposition) and dharma (the law of religion).

The same subject has been dealt with in some what greater detail and with slight modifications by Gūnabhadra who has characterised samyagdāmā as of two kinds: nisargāja (intuitive) and adhigamāja (tuitive). While the former is self-born and inspired, the latter is acquired by precept, study and guidance. There is need for subsidence of Karmas and conquest of passions and pride which have already been dealt with. Then he refers to ten sources which form the springs of Right Faith: 1) ājñā is the precept of passionless saints; 2) mārga is belief in the peaceful path of eternal liberation which is free from temporal ties and attachments and which arises as a result of the subsidences of the deluding Karmas; 3) upadeśa is belief which arises from the teachings of the ancient saints and from the sayings that are found in the ocean of great scriptures of right knowledge; 4) sūtra is another source of belief; it consists of rules of conduct prescribed for the ascetics and of religious discipline which when studied bring in fresh light and understanding; 5) bija is belief which arises from the knowledge of the substances
and the padārthas which are difficult to understand but can be understood after patient pursuit and as a result of the subsidence of perverse belief. 6) samkṣepa is belief of the laudable ones; the belief in this case is acquired in the principles even through the same have been expounded briefly; 7) viśṭāra is belief possessed by one after a careful study of the twelve āṅgas which constitute the ancient sacred lore; 8) artha is belief which is produced by ascertaining the true meaning of doctrines contained in sacred books, without undue emphasis on words; 9) avagāḍha is belief acquired as a result of the study of sacred literature consisting of the Āṅgas and other books; 10) paramāvagāḍha is belief in the truths as seen by the omniscients.¹⁰

From what has been discussed above, it should be clear that samyaktva is characterised by love of religion (saṃvega), indifference to worldly pleasures (nírveda) and an attitude of self-criticism for all conscious and careless transgressions of ethical rules of conduct. A person with samyaktva should confess and repent before his spiritual preceptor for his faults (garhā) and consciously exert to subdue his passions (upaśama). There should be devotion towards the five supreme saints (pañca-paraḿeśṭhis) and affection for the virtuous (vātsalya). To crown all, compassion towards all living creatures (anukampā) should be the devout creed. Samyagdarśana is thus grounded in spiritualism. It is proper insight into the nature of things which is necessary for the knowledge of truth. The man who acquires this true insight is characterised by an attitude of mind determined to know the precise truth at all costs.¹¹ We can scarce forbear mentioning that Jainism is not merely ethics and metaphysics but spiritualism too which is evidently manifest from the persistent emphasis laid by all the Jaina philosophers, without any exception, on the veritable achievement of samyagdarśana before any ācāra subscribing to the attainment of emancipation is practised. Samantabhadra has stated that even the Ganadharaśas would regard a person possessed of samyaktva as a god, though he might have been born in a low family.¹² There can be no rise, stability, growth and fulfilment of knowledge and character, unless they are founded on Right Faith.
Right Knowledge

Right Faith makes us perceive, though not in full detail, the principles of life and matter, devote our thoughts and worship towards the conquerors and bestow our diligence in the study of scriptures. With belief in the tenets of religion, the ground for pursuit of knowledge would have been prepared. What is more, there would be the necessary purity of thought and a reverential but logical attitude of approach. Mithyātva is the bane of right knowledge.

Samantabhadra has defined knowledge as comprehension of the full and real nature of an object, as it is, without any doubt, perversity or exaggeration. Comprehension which is partial, excessive, perverted or doubtful is wrong knowledge. Nemicandra Siddhānta Cakravarti holds the view that perfect knowledge is full comprehension of the real nature of soul and matter free from doubt (Satīṣaya), perversity (vimoha) and indefiniteness (vibhramā). Jaina philosophers have laid down that there are four means (pramāṇas) of acquiring right knowledge: they are: i) direct perception (pratyakṣa), inference (anumāna) analogy (upamāna) and sacred precepts (āgama).

From the real point of view, knowledge is the inherent attribute of the soul. It is the knower as well as the fountain-head of knowledge. That knowledge is perfect; but, it is only due to the veils of Karma that its immensity and brilliance are not realizable. Knowledge is perfect when it does not suffer from the mithyātva or wrong belief. Mithyātva is the enemy of right knowledge as it perverts both the understanding and attitude. Kundakunda holds the view that self-knowledge is the true knowledge. Expounding the theory from a negative point of view, he says that scripture, word, form, colour, smell, taste, touch, Karma or any of the substances is not knowledge. The reason is that all these attributes are the characteristics of matter and hence foreign to the nature of the soul. The soul is the knower, the enlightened and therefore knowledge is not separate from the knower. This knowledge is itself right belief.
Right Faith or insight is the stepping stone to right knowledge. That is why all Jaina thinkers have insisted upon elimination of wrong belief from the mind. Mithyātva reminds one somewhat of the ignorance (avidyā) of the Vedānta, the want of discrimination (aviveka) of the Sāmkhya, and the illusion (māyā) of the Buddhist systems of philosophy. Jainism insists that right knowledge cannot be attained unless wrong knowledge is banished.\textsuperscript{17}

While dealing with the subject of Jiva or the concept of soul, we have dealt with the kinds of knowledge from the practical point of view. Knowledge is either svabhāva jñāna (natural knowledge) and vibhāva jñāna (non-natural).\textsuperscript{18} The former is perfect and is not assisted by any external agency in its acquisition. Due to the operation of the knowledge-obscuring Karmas, natural knowledge does not function in all people; knowledge derived from other sources would be therefore non-natural (vibhāva). Vibhāva jñāna is of two kinds: it may be right knowledge or wrong knowledge. There are thus eight kinds of knowledge about which something has already been said.

When considered with reference to its means of acquisition, knowledge is of five kinds as already explained in chapter II. Knowledge which is acquired through any of the five senses or the mind is māti-jñāna, while that which is acquired through the scriptures is śruta-jñāna. While the first kind of knowledge is limited to things and matters in existence, the other might comprehend all matters of the present, past and future as expounded in the scriptures. Avadhi jñāna is knowledge of the remote past. It can be acquired by saints who have attained purity of thought and developed their mental capacity by austerities. It is otherwise possessed by the celestial and infernal souls. The fourth kind, manahparyāya-jñāna is knowledge about the thoughts of others; it can be acquired by those who have gained self-mastery. The last is kevala-jñāna which dawns on the Tirthankaras, or perfect souls.

What is necessary for and relevant to the point at issue is the vital importance of Right Knowledge in the scheme of the path of
Liberation. With the attainment of right faith, we should master the system of Jaina philosophy by study of the scriptures and a faithful assimilation of the principles. Every tenet conducive to advancement of the self must be understood correctly and fully, dispelling all doubts and misconceptions. Such knowledge must guide our thoughts and speech. Perfect knowledge is inherent in the soul but is obscured by the Jñānāvaranīya Karma. It is only by subsidence or destruction of that Karma that right knowledge can be gained partially or fully.

Eventhough the rise of Right Knowledge is simultaneous with the acquisition of Right Faith, yet the Karmas that hinder their rise and progress are different. Mithyātva is common to both but the Darśanāvaranīya Karma is the veil that obscures right faith. There is detailed discussion above as to how samyaktva could be acquired. Samyaktva is the breath of right knowledge, the latter grows in its dimensions and brilliance in proportion to the destruction of the Jñānāvaranīya Karma. With the entire destruction of there emerges the resplendent knowledge or Omniscience. Just as the sun can shine with full brilliance only with the melting away of all clouds that obscure his light, so also knowledge which is inherent in the soul can become omniscience only when the cloud of the Jñānāvaranīya Karma has been vanquished. Samyag darśana is as much the natural attribute of the soul as samyag-jñāna. The causal connection between knowledge and faith is to be found in the fact that rational faith presupposes some sort of intellectual enquiry or investigation, notwithstanding the fact that right knowledge is itself dependent on right faith. Knowledge and faith are inter-dependent.

While our senses and the mind can be the media for acquisition of knowledge, the scriptures occupy a significant position in the assimilation of ethical and spiritual knowledge. Their devoted study not only moulds our outlook and character but also effectively shapes our mind to give a direction and meaning to our entire life. The twelve āṅgas and the sūtras occupy a special place amongst the scriptures, though there is divergence of opinion
about their authenticity between the Svetāmbaras and the Dīgambaras. That apart many eminent Ācāryas have contributed immense and invaluable literature to enrich the spiritual heritage of Jainism. These scriptures cover the entire gamut of Jaina philosophy couched in a simple style intelligible to the laity.

Jainism posits that with Right Faith, man has to endeavour by austerities and penance to acquire the highest kind of knowledge, omniscience. It can be attained only on the complete destruction of the destructive (gātī) Karmas. The relation between right faith and right knowledge is just the same as between a lamp and its light. Even though lamp and light go together, there must be lamp which must have oil and wick before it could be lighted. Similarly, before right knowledge can be gained, there must be the inexhaustible piety and urge for knowledge which is the oil; the sources of knowledge like the scriptures, the discourses from preceptors and saints are the wick; the pursuit and study with devotion are like lighting the lamp; then only there can be light in the form of knowledge.

From the practical point of view, continuous efforts to know the fundamental truths are necessary; if doubts haunt the mind, they ought to be dispelled by better understanding, if prverity is there, its root cause must be removed and if vagueness be there, the thoughts and ideas must be clarified by further study and discussion with the learned saints and preceptors.

Amṛtacandra Ācārya has indicated that we need eight pillars to construct a sound edifice of Right Knowledge. They are: 1) grantha or the reading of sacred books. Study of such books with care and faith is the first requisite. 2) artha is meaning: mechanical study without understanding the meaning serves no purpose. Reading becomes fruitful only when the significance of the words, phrases, and their implications are satisfactorily mastered and digested. 3) ubhaya. Both reading and understanding of the meaning are essential, they together complete the process and the purport. It is emphasis that mere reading is not enough. 4) Kāla. The time chosen for study must be
peaceful and free from disturbance of worries and anxieties. Besides, there must be regularity and punctuality. vi) vinaya. Humility, reverential attitude towards the scriptures and an inquisitive approach to the subject approach are to be cultivated to develop our devotion to learning. vii) sopoladhana is propriety of conduct and behaviour. While studying we do come across difficult words and expressions, inexplicable ideas and thoughts. The mind must be receptive and responsive. One should not draw impatient or hasty conclusions which might lead to improper behaviour. viii) bahumana. Zeal in the mastery of the subject under study is also essential to sustain interest and continuity.

Thus right knowledge can be acquired by pursuit with devotion by reading sacred scriptures understanding their full meaning and significance in proper time and with punctuality, imbued with zeal, proper behaviour and open mind.20

In conclusion, we may add that the distinguishing feature of Jaina epistemology (i.e. theory of knowledge) is that in the strictest sense, there is one and only one type of immediate and real knowledge and that is Kevala Jñana. It is because of this that such type of knowledge is also referred to as transcendental and extra-sensory perception. Since the function of the sense organs and the mind are considered to be positive obstructions to knowledge, avadhijñana and manahparyaya-jñana are referred to as direct perceptions only in a qualified sense viz., as representing the progressive stages towards and as preparatory steps to direct knowledge, kevala-jñana. Since the ultimate criterion of real knowledge is absence of obstruction and since one of the obstructive factors, the mind is found in avadh and manahparya, they are considered as not being capable of giving direct knowledge.21
Right Conduct

Right Faith and Right Knowledge, which equip the individual with freedom from delusion and consequently with true knowledge of the fundamental principles clarifying what are worthy of renunciation and realization, require Right Conduct as an integral and crowning constituent of the path of liberation. From the practical point of view, says Kunda Kunda, right conduct consists in the practice or observance of the austerities while from the real point of view, it consists in the observance of penance by being absorbed in the contemplation of the true nature of the self.²² Nemicandra has expanded the idea when he says that right conduct consists from the realistic point of view, in checking the external activities of the body, and the speech as also the internal activities of the mind so that all hindrances and veils in the realization of the true nature of the soul are removed. Right Conduct destroys the causes of transmigration. Both the auspicious and inauspicious Karmas, which are foreign to the true nature of the pure soul and are the causes of worldly existence, are destroyed by practice of meditation with concentration. Success in meditation depends upon complete detachment from pleasant and unpleasant objects and thoughts which distract the mind.²³

From the real point of view, only that person who has renounced the world, who possesses concentration of mind and who knows and divines the true nature of his soul can exhibit Right Conduct. The conduct must be consistent with the attributes of the soul and free from all infirmities and perversions which are foreign to the nature of the soul. The three jewels only in combination constitute the path of liberation and he who acts, knows and realizes himself through himself becomes convinced as to conduct, knowledge and faith.²⁴

Jaina philosophers have laid great emphasis on right conduct. Conduct which is inconsistent with right knowledge is wrong conduct or misconduct. Liberation of the soul from bondage can be achieved only by the fulfilment of the three jewels. If a person
well-versed in the scriptures is not self-disciplined and does not practise all the austerities, his knowledge will be of no use. He will be in the position of a donkey which carries sandal wood without the enjoyment of its fragrance. The Karmas have to be destroyed by action. Conduct becomes perfect only when it is in tune with Right Faith and Right Knowledge.

Right Conduct will elevate the soul while subduing the activities of the senses and the mind. It results from purity of thought and self-discipline. Since sins of the body are more harmful than the sins of the mind, the Jaina thinkers have attached very great importance to conduct; because it affects not only the doer but also others. Conduct is the external manifestation of the will in the form of an act, speech or writing. Since it affects the self and others, it ought to be marked by righteousness, compassion, kindness and freedom from anger, hatred, pride or disgust.

So, the Jaina ethics covers the entire field of human activity, personal as well as social behaviour. Ahimsā or non-violence and love towards all, forms the basis of right conduct. It illumines the self and endows the individual with spiritual strength.

It is a matter of common experience and knowledge that there are differences in the level of mental equipment of individuals. That is why Right Conduct or samyak-cāritra has been conceived of as of two categories: sakala (complete) and vikala (partial). The former involves practice of all the rules of conduct with rigour and higher degree of spiritual sensitivity while the latter involves practice of the same with as much increasing degree of diligence and purity as might be possible. Sakala-cāritra is therefore meant for an ascetic; it is muni-dharma. Vikala-cāritra is for householder.

Since the object of Right Conduct is destruction of Karmas while securing peace of mind and happiness in daily life, the Uttarādhyayana Sūtra prescribes certain broad guide-lines for its achievement: i) Sāmāyika is avoidance of everything sinful.
It requires every one to desist from harmful activities. That is the very breath of Jaina ethics and cream of the message of the Tirthankaras. ii) Chedopasthāpana is initiation of a novice into the essentials of right conduct. This would involve not only acquainting him with all the rules of conduct but also with the objectives behind them. A superficial understanding of the rules or vows hardly elevates the mind; if the practice of the same is beset with ignorance, there can be no illumination of the mind or purgation of the Karmas. iii) Parihāraviśuddhikā is purity produced by observance of austerities. As we shall see in the next chapter, there are a number of austere practices prescribed by Jaina ethics for the ascetics and for the house-holders. Their faithful observance will purify the mind and free the soul from inauspicious Karmas. iv) Sūkṣma samparāya is reduction of desires and passions which are the root causes of our misery and of transmigration. The various vows and austerities are intended to reduce them either by subjugation or eradication. v) Aksaya yathākhyāta is annihilation of sinfulness according to the precepts of the Arhats. This is an injunction to the ascetics as much as to the beings involved in worldly existence.²⁵

The various vows, the ten virtues, the five fold regulations (samiti), endurance of afflictions (pariṇahasan), the three-fold controls (gupti), the austerities and the penances form in brief the regulatory and purificatory doctrines of Jaina ethics and each one of them needs a separate discussion. It is enough to point out that the importance of Right Conduct in the process of self-realization consists in that it is only when right knowledge is translated into spiritual discipline that the path of emancipation becomes smooth.

The integrated nature of the ethic-spiritual disciplines leading to liberation has been fully appreciated by the Jaina philosophers and this is evident from the tri-ratna concept. None of these - right faith, right knowledge or right conduct can be pursued meaningfully and effectively in isolation from each other, for the spiritual principle to be realized in life is neither a theoretical abstraction nor an easy thing which could be practised merely.
The Jainas insist that in the absence of faith the other two do not work. This is quite understandable in view of the fact that modern psychology has clearly indicated that faith has in it the key to any cure.\textsuperscript{26}

Love for truth begets love for spiritual advancement which culminates in the acquisition of full knowledge. Inspite of omniscience, the soul does not get freed from the body until all the activities cease. The activities cease only when complete spiritual discipline is attained. Since wrong attitude, perverted knowledge and perverse conduct are the causes of transmigration, emancipation can be attained when the three excellences or the three Jewels manifest themselves on the removal of the obscuring species of Karmas.
Bibliography and References

   Vira Sadana Sangha, 29 Indra Visvas Road, Calcutta-37


3. Ibid Verses 20, 21.


8. Ibid Verses 11 to 18.


CHAPTER XIII

JAINA ETHICS AND WAY OF LIFE OR BEING

All great religions of the world have laid great stress on morality as a vital factor regulating the conduct of an individual for his own good as also for the well-being of the society of which he is a member. The goal of a society is maintenance of moral values of brotherhood, justice and peace. Devotion to ethical ideals is the hallmark of all modern civilizations. Ancient thinkers considered ethics as part of metaphysical and theological speculations and therefore made moral principles as part of their religion. In doing so, they have tried to indicate the relationship between man and the universe, and his goal in life. Though man’s conduct in society is the normal field of ethics, the Jaina thinkers have linked ethics with metaphysical ideas and ideals.

Jaina ethics is the most glorious part of Jainism and it is simplicity itself. That is how some authors have described Jainism as Ethical Realism. There is no conflict between man’s duty to himself and to society. The highest good of society is the highest good of the individual. The soul has to be evolved to the best of its present capacity, and one means to this evolution is the duty of helping that of others by example, advice, encouragement and help.¹

The first precept to a follower of Jainism is that he should possess and cultivate an intelligent and reasoned faith in that
religion. It must be of right type and should be free from false notions about God, scriptures and the precepts. Such right faith works as an inspiration for acquisition of Right Knowledge which ought to be reflected in conduct in daily life. As Jacobi says, Jaina ethics has for its end the realization of Nirvāṇa or Mokṣa. To effect this end, the rules of conduct must be observed and corresponding virtues must be acquired.

Conduct is reflection in action of inner faith in religion or moral values cherished by an individual. His degree of self-control and attitude of mind are evident from his behaviour. The difference in the conduct of two individuals towards a matter or other persons is largely due to the difference in their cultural and religious upbringing modified by the values of life which themselves might have developed during the period of their growth.

From the religious point of view, Jainism has prescribed rules of conduct separately for the i) the householder (śrāvaka) and ii) the ascetic (muni). The rules of conduct prescribed for them are called śrāvaka-dharma and muni-dharma, respectively. Some of the vows and austerities which are common to both are intended to be observed by the ascetics with greater rigour and diligence than by the householder. The reason is that a householder has to look after his family and adjust himself to the social and political conditions in which he lives. An ascetic has no such limitations as he abandons all of them with the sole aim of pursuing a spiritual path. He can observe the vows fully as he is in full control of his senses and is in a position to curb his passions quite easily due to his religious learning and spiritual discipline.

Since the aim of the rules of conduct and vows prescribed for the śrāvakas is self-purification, it is but natural that they should be classified on the basis of their faith and capacity. A śrāvaka is one who listens (srota) or who has faith. It is common experience that men and women differ everywhere in their capacity for intellectual grasp and firmness of will. The Jaina thinkers have accordingly adopted a three-fold division: i) pāśika
is a layman who has inclination (pākṣa) towards Ahimsā. He pos-
sees samyaktva and practises the mūla-guṇas and the ānuvrata
and is assiduous in performing the pūjā; ii) Naiṣṭhika is one
who pursues his path upwards through the pratimās till he reaches
the eleventh stage. At the culminating point (niṣṭhā), he quits
the household life and practises the ten-fold dharma of the ascetic.
It would seem that if he backslides, he is downgraded to the state
of a pāksika; iii) śādhaka is one who concludes (śādhyayati) his
human incarnation in a final purification of the self by carrying
out sālekhāṇā." It may be added that naiṣṭika also means one
who is devoted and is possessed of full faith in the tenets. The
classification is inherent in the weaknesses of human nature and
expects the layman or laywoman to follow the rules of conduct
and the vows to the best of his or her capacity and understanding.

It was during the time of Bhagavān Mahāvīra that the
society came to be divided into four groups: śādhu (ascetic),
sādhvi (female ascetic), śrāvaka (house-holder), śrāvikā (female
house-holder). The rules of conduct described for the first two
classes were almost identical; similar rules were enjoined upon the
last two classes. The conduct of each class was regulated by vows
which every member was required to observe in his or her daily
life.

What is a vow? It is a solemn resolve made after deliberation
to observe a particular rule of conduct; it is made before a
saint on his advice or voluntarily to protect oneself against possible
lapses of conduct. The object is to control the mind and mould
one’s conduct along the spiritual path. The rules are such as
intended to protect the society from harm by protecting oneself
in the righteous path. A vow affords stability to the will and guards
its votary from the evils of temptations or of unregulated life;
it gives purpose to life and a healthy direction to our thoughts
and actions. It helps the growth of self-control and protects
against the pitfalls of free life.

Every individual has some weakness or the other. It is
difficult to enumerate them and provide anti-dotes against each of
them. The rules of conduct or of ethics are therefore based on the fundamentals.

Srāvaka-dharma

It may be unnecessary to repeat that the foundation of Jain ethics is emancipation. The hallmark of Right Conduct is right conviction in thought and action, freedom from infatuation or delusion and passions like anger, hatred etc. Samantabhadra defines conduct as the abstinence of a man (with right knowledge) from himsā (injury) anṛta (falsehood), caurya (stealing), maithuna (sexual intercourse) and parigraha (attachment). From the popular point of view, cārita (conduct) consists in the pursuit of what is good and beneficial and the avoidance of what is harmful to oneself as well as to others.

These are the five vows which are prescribed both for the house-holders as also for the ascetics. Observance of the vows in a limited way is anuvrata (small vow) while complete observance is mahāvrata (great vow). The practice of these vows with vigilance dispels sufferings, just as an excellent specific medicine removes a disease. The great vows are for ascetics.

Since all writers have formulated these vows in a negative phraseology, critics have characterised the philosophy underlying them as of negative creeds. This is not correct since each vow has its negative aspect in the form of moral prohibitions and positive aspect in the form of a moral duty. Negative terms are effective injunctions. In the last resort every moral code rests, like the Christian decalogue (or the ten commandments) on prohibitions; but even in Jainism each anuvrata has its positive as well as its negative aspect. Ahimsā can be formulated as dayā, active compassion for all living beings. If Jainism has never challenged the constituted order of society, it has essayed to permeate it with the spirit of compassion but because human beings are actuated by self-interest it has pointed out to them the lower motives for doing good.
Each of these vows has a two-fold purpose. The first is spiritual in that the observance of each of these vows will prevent the influx of new Karmas. The thought of injury, theft, or falsehood is the cause of demerit or sin. The thoughts in action will be punished by the state. The other purpose is social. By observance of each of the vows, an individual will be discharging his social obligation. To desist from violence or theft is to preserve peace and safety in society. While the spiritual fruit of observance of the vows is self-control and stoppage of the evil propensities of the mind, the mundane fruit is mental peace and the good of the society at-large.

Samantabhadra has stated that the conduct of a house-holder (grhaastha) consists in the observance of five anuvratas, three gunavratas and four siksāvratas.¹ I shall follow the same order in dealing with the subject.

Ahimsā

The first of the five vows is Ahimsā. Ahimsā means not-hurting; he who abstains from causing any hurt or harm to any trasa-jīva or a living being with two or more senses either intentionally, or through others or by consenting to another to do so, observes the vow of Ahimsā. Ahimsā is the highest form of religion, say the Jaina thinkers. Surely non-appearance of attachment and passions is Ahimsā, says Amritacandra Sūri.⁵ When a person is overcome by passions, he causes himsā or injury to his own self, though there may not be injury to any living being. When, however, there is injury to the vitalities of a living being when one is free from passions and has conducted one-self with sufficient care, there is no himsā. There is certainly himsā in such a case when one is careless and under the influence of passions. Everything depends upon the state of mind and intention to abstain from himsā or to commit himsā even where actual hurt or injury is not caused.

Umaśvāmi has defined himsā to mean the severance of any of the vitalities by one actuated by passion. Jainism holds that the
inimobile beings possess four vitalities viz., touch, energy, respiration and life-duration. The mobile beings possess besides the above, any two or more of the senses viz., senses of taste, smell, sight, hearing and speech. Those endowed with the mind have in all ten vitalities. Thus injury is caused by severance of any of the vitalities in a mobile or immobile being. Such injury causes pain and suffering to life. He who causes injury with passion or through carelessness is guilty of himsā. Himsā may be either bhāva-himsā under the influence of passions, or dravya-
himsā where there is physical injury.

Umāsvāmi has prescribed five rules of restraint for being firm in the observance of the vow of non-injury. Control of speech, control of thought, regulation of movement, care in lifting and placing things or objects and examination of food and drink before taking in, are the five observances. Self-control is of vital importance. Since one is required to refrain from hurting the feelings of others to observe the vow of Ahimsā, control of speech and thought are quite essential. Everyone ought to be careful in his movements for fear of causing hurt or harm to a living being through carelessness. Similarly one ought to be careful while placing down things or objects lest they should hurt some tiny being. Such precaution has also to be taken even while lifting up any object. Similarly it is necessary to examine minutely one’s own food or drink before taking it in, making sure that there is no tiny being in it.

Jainism makes a distinction between bhāva-himsā (intention to hurt) and dravya-himsā or the actual causing of hurt. That is why five kinds of restraints have been expressly mentioned above as the cautions to be observed by one who wants to desist from causing hurt. Similarly, a distinction is made between sūkṣma-
himsā and sthūla-himsā. The former requires abstention from causing hurt to life in any form while the latter requires abstention from hurting forms of life possessing two or more senses. It is not possible for a house-holder to refrain from causing hurt to forms of life with one sense like plants, trees, crops etc. He must
however refrain causing unnecessary harm to ekendriya and sthāvara jīvas, but it is ordained that a monk should desist from causing hīṃsā to any form of life.

As a practical religion, Jainism has considered what is normally possible for an average person. Hīṃsā is of two kinds: saṃkalpi (intentional) and ārambhi (occupational). Hunting, offering animal sacrifice, killing for food or sport are instances of intentional hīṃsā. Abstinence from them is possible with no harm to anybody. Ārambhi hīṃsā is hīṃsā committed by a house-holder in the ordinary course of his living. It is of three kinds: 1) Udyami, 2) Grāhārambhi and 3) Virodhi.

1) Udyami: A house-holder has to follow some occupation or the other in order maintain himself and his family. Jainism regards six occupations as permissible: i) Asi or sword. It is open to a person to become a soldier or some other officer who has to use a sword or weapon in the discharge of his duties; ii) masi or ink. One can follow the occupation of a writer or work in any office or business where writing is required to be done; iii) kṛṣi or agriculture. A person can engage himself in agricultural or horticultural operations by cultivation of lands; iv) vāṇīja or trade. A house-holder can follow such trade as does not involve intentional hīṃsā. He cannot follow the trade of a butcher, wine-merchant etc. v) śilpa or sculpture. He can follow any industry for production of consumer goods. vi) vidyā. He can follow the learned professions like literature, teaching, art etc. It is not possible to avoid hīṃsā involved in carrying out the obligations of these occupations (udyami).

So far as the 2) grāhārambhi hīṃsā is concerned some kind of hīṃsā is involved in carrying out the domestic duties and obligations. Hīṃsā is involved in constructing a house, in the preparation of food, use of water in bathing, washing etc., keeping of cattle, maintenance of gardens and growing or using vegetables, digging of wells, cutting of crops and fruits. In short, whatever hīṃsā is involved in the discharge of obligations necessary as a house-holder is permissible as otherwise normal life becomes impossible.
3) Virodhī hīṃsā is committed in self-defence or defence of person or property of members of the family or relatives and friends. One has to defend against thieves, robbers, decoits or enemies in battles. Jainism does not preach cowardice. Defence of country is one of the obligations as a soldier in the army. The only restriction is that unnecessary hīṃsā must not be indulged in as a matter of hostility or revenge.

In order to guard oneself against hīṃsā, one must completely renounce wine, flesh, honey and the five udumbar fruits: that is fruits belonging to the fig variety or of the genus ficus in which tiny beings are born in numbers: gulār, anjīr (fig), banyan, peepal and pākar. In eating any of these kinds of fruits, not only is there hīṃsā of innumerable tiny insects and invisible organisms but also of countless seeds with which such a fruit is full. Wine is the birth-place of many organisms, like the flesh which is secured by killing an animal or from a dead animal. Every destruction of life involves destruction of compassion too. Honey is to be avoided not only because its collection involves hīṃsā but also because it contains a large number of tiny invisible eggs. Wine intoxicates the mind of the drinker and its preparation by fermentation involves inevitable hīṃsā of jīvas.

Those who are non-vegetarians often argue that since taking vegetables, fruits, milk and cereals also involves hīṃsā there could be no objection to meat-eating. It should be remembered that taking vegetarian diet involves injury to one-sensed beings. There is no injury to mobile beings. It is from this practical need Jaina authors have classified living beings according to their grades with reference to sense-organs and development. The argument ignores the fact that the body of an animal contains innumerable mobile and immobile beings. Microscopic examination will disclose the presence of a vast number of living organisms. In killing an animal or even in eating the flesh of a dead animal, one cannot escape from causing injury to a large number of vitalities. That is not so in eating vegetable food where hīṃsā involved is the minimum and that too to beings of one sense which are immobile.
Jainism prohibits killing either in the name of gods by way of sacrifice or for guests as a mark of respect. One should not kill animals like lions, tigers, snakes etc., on the ground that they harm others. It has to be conceded that these animals do not harm those who do not put them in fear or hold out threats of harm. In the world of animals there is no wanton killing. In fact, as compared with men, animals behave more kindly and live together. Killing horrifies because all beings wish to live and not to be slain. It is now found that even wild birds and animals have a purpose to serve and that is why a movement for protection of wild life is being undertaken by Governments and humanitarian organizations. Killing beings in misery or suffering, on the ground that they will be free from pain and agony is violence. In such cases, one should give medical assistance or nursing. Happiness and misery are the fruits of one's own Karmas previously acquired. Acts of killing are positively harmful as they cause greater pain to the animals concerned than mere suffering due to disease or injury. There will be greater bondage of evil Karmas to the killer. Killing is a great sin because all beings wish to live and never wish to be slain. Compassion is the beneficent mother of all beings.

Samantabhadra has laid down that there are five transgressions (aticāras) of the vow of Ahimsā. They are: chedana, bandhana, pidana, atibhārārōpana and āhāravāraṇa. These affect the purity of the vow in as much as each of these five acts brings suffering to the beings like servants and animals. Chedana means cutting of ear, nose or any other limb with any sharp instrument like a sword, axe or sickle. It is applied to purposeless cutting of trees or barks of trees. This is a merciless act due to carelessness or as a matter of punishment. Bandhana is keeping men or beasts in captivity, the tying of cattle, horses, dogs and other beasts of domestic use. The principle to be followed is that tying should be with consideration (sāpekṣa). It applies to keeping birds like parrots, pet birds etc in cages. Keeping persons accused of offences in chains or tied hands and foot by ropes more than what is necessary to prevent them from running away is a trans-
gression. Ptḍana is the transgression which consists in thrashing men or animals with ropes, whips, rods or sticks. Kicking servants etc will be included in this transgression of the vow. The aticāra will be there when the act is cruel or merciless. Avoidance of vital spots and due consideration for age are necessary if the act is to free from cruelty. Atibhārāropāna means overloading bullocks, horses, or in vehicles drawn by them. Even compelling servants to carry more load in excess of their capacity is a transgression. Loading more than is warranted by their capacity on men or animals is the gist of this transgression. Āhāravāraṇa consists in preventing men or beasts from taking food or drink. There is no transgression if the restriction is due to medical grounds. Starving men or animals by denying food or drink when they need it amounts to transgression.

It would be well to stress here that Ahimsā is not something negative: it is another aspect of dayā—compassion which is, in Hemachandra's words, 'the beneficent mother of all beings,' the elixir for those who wander in suffering through the ocean of re-incarnation. This positive Ahimsā is expressed in the form of karunā-dāna or abhaya-dāna, the giving of protection to all living creatures.11 Samantabhara says that Ahimsā is the highest bliss known to beings in this world. (Ahimsā-bhūtānāṁ jagati viditam brahma paramāṁ).

The consequences of violence (hiṁsā) are calamity and reproach in this world and the next. He who commits violence is always agitated and afflicted, being actuated by animosity. He suffers pain and suffering, sometimes imprisonment also. Therefore everyone should avoid violence and practise benevolence towards, all living beings, feel joy at the sight of the virtuous, show compassion and sympathy towards the afflicted and adopt an attitude of tolerance towards the insolent and ill-behaved. He who conducts himself in life in this way is able to practice non-violence and other vows to perfection.11 Thus the positive virtues which a votary of non-violence must possess are maitrī (love or friendship), pramoda (joy and respect), kārūnya (compassion),
mādhyastha (tolerance) towards living beings as stated by Umāsvāmi.\textsuperscript{13} Compassion towards all beings is as invaluable and miraculous in its effects, as a Cintāmani gem, says Somadeva.\textsuperscript{14}

Satya (Truthfulness)

It is difficult to define truth, though its nature is understandable. Umāsvāmi says that speaking what is not commendable is falsehood.\textsuperscript{15} Commenting on this Sūtra, Pūjyapāda says that which causes pain and suffering to a living being is not commendable, whether it refers to actual facts or not. The words that lead to injury constitute falsehood. Samantabhadra says that he who does not speak gross (sthūla) falsehood, does not cause others to speak and does not speak even the truth if it is likely to bring danger (vipāda) to himself or to anybody else, can be said to desist from gross falsehood.\textsuperscript{16} Amṛt candra has given negative views of truth. According to him, it is falsehood to make a wrong statement through careless activity of body, mind or speech (pramāda-yoga). Falsehood is of four kinds: i) denying the existence of a thing with reference to its position, time and nature when it actually exists; ii) assertion of the existence of a thing with reference to its position, time and nature when it does not exist; iii) where a thing is represented to be something different from what it is actually, as when a horse is said to be a cow; iv) when a speech is ordinarily condemnable (garhita), sinful (sāvadya) and disagreeable (apriya).

Any speech which is actuated by passion (pramāta-yoga) is false. Back-biting, harsh, unbecoming, non-sensical or unethical speech is condemnable (garhita). That speech which provokes another to engage in piercing, cutting, beating etc., or likely to lead to destruction of life is sinful (sāvadya). All disagreeable speech (apriya) causes uneasiness, pain, hostility, grief, anguish etc., to another person. Falsehood involves himiśa or injury of some kind or other. The material point is the intention behind the speech. Where a saint or a preceptor gives sound advice against vices or
questionable habit of life, he cannot be said to indulge in false speech, even though the person affected may feel ashamed or uncomfortable.

Umaśvāmi has advised that a person who wants to be truthful ought to give up anger, greed, cowardice, fearfulness, jest and blameless words (anuviccībhāṣaṇam). There should be no effort to avoid deliberately the use of blameless words if the occasion or the context needs. Somadeva makes distinction between degrees of truth mixed and falsehood as we find sometimes truth with falsehood. He mentions divulging of secrets, slander, back-biting, forgery and perjury as obstacles to truth. He cautions against exaggeration, fault-finding and indecent speech and advises that one should always speak what is “noble, beneficial and concise.” One must avoid boasting and jealousy about the merits of others and that would draw one unconsciously into falsehood.

There are five transgressions of truth against which Samanta-bhadra has cautioned all those who want to observe the vow of truthfulness. Giving false or wrong advice (parivāda) about any matter or rules of good conduct is the first kind of aticāra. Misleading people in matters of belief or conduct is very objectionable and must therefore be avoided. Divulging the secrets (rahobhyākhyaṇa) of others or breaking the promise of secrecy involves untruth. Disclosure of confidential talks which one may have overheard is similarly objectionable. Slandering (pāśuṇya) others or talking about the weaknesses of other people should not be indulged in as it will damage the prestige of the people concerned. Committing perjury or forgery (kūṭalekha-karana) to which Somadeva has referred is the fourth kind of aticāra. This includes keeping or maintenance of false accounts and carrying on false propaganda about others. Committing breach of trust or misappropriation (nyāsāpahāra) of what is entrusted to an individual in confidence is the fifth transgression of the vow of truthfulness. There are many occasions when people entrust their ornaments or cash to others under various circumstances believing that they would be returned when needed. Denying such deposit wholly or partially is an act of falsehood.
R. Williams has referred to some of the scriptures acceptable both to the Digambaras and Śvetāmbaras and categorised the forms of untruth: i) denial of what is, ii) assertion of what is not, iii) representation of something in a form other than its real form and iv) reprehensible speech which is tactlessly hurtful, insulting, or encouraging harmful actions like advice to steal or kill. He has discussed other aticāras, mentioned by Haribhadra, Siddhaśena Ganin and others, which may be briefly indicated: imputing someone without due reflection a non-existent fault, allegations made by way of jibes, divulging to others what has been said by one's wife in confidence under special circumstances, uttering words that may cause distress to others, counterfeiting of seals of others or attributing some statement to another though he has in fact not made it and divulging from jealousy or other motive of the secret intention of another inferred from his gestures or facial expressions.

Jainism regards asatya as a form of hiṃsā. Falsehood brings in endless miseries here and in the next birth. A liar becomes a traitor to himself. Truth always triumphs and every one should therefore adhere to that ideal. Falsehood may sometimes land its author in prison or bring in disgrace and damage to property also.

Acaurya (Non-stealing)

Umaśvāmi defines stealing as taking what is not given (adattādānāṁ steyān). Taking anything that is not given amounts to theft, if the activity is actuated by impure thought. Samantabhadra has given a comprehensive definition of what is not theft. The vow of abstinence from theft consists in not taking anything which is not given, whether such thing has been deposited under ground has been dropped by oversight or has been forgotten. In other words, the gross vow of non-stealing can be observed by desisting from taking away property which is not actually given by the owner.

Amṛtcandra clearly says that theft also involves hiṃsā as taking of property which is not given not only injures the purity
of thought but also pains the person who is deprived of his property. Theft, if detected, may lead to punishment by imprisonment. In taking what belongs to another, there is pramatta-yoga or operation of activity aroused by some passion. The desire to possess some other's property without his consent or knowledge involves spiritual denigration of the self. A householder should not take water from private wells unless the permission of the owner is taken. No such difficulty arises in the case of public wells and roads which are dedicated to the public for use. Somadeva adds that those who take the vow of non-stealing must not take anything belonging to others whether in a house or in the street or on water or in the woods or on the hills. Mines and hidden treasures belong to the king, though they may be of unknown ownership. This view is consistent with modern law in our country.

As in the case of other vows, there are five kinds of transgressions (aticāras) in the case of theft also. One may not himself commit theft but if he instigates another to commit theft or shows him the way of committing theft, when he is guilty of abetment of theft (cauraprayoga). Receiving stolen property is another kind of transgression (caurārthadāna). The third kind of transgression known as Vilopa is when a person resorts to under-hand dealings for getting a thing in contravention of rules of control and restrictions which the state might have imposed. Adulteration (sadṛṣasammiśra) is mixing of material of lower value with other material of higher value identical in colour or substance for sale with the motive of unlawful gain like mixing dālda with ghee or fat with butter etc. The fifth kind of aticāra refers to the use of false weights and measures (hīnādhikavinimāna), as for example using heavier weight for purchasing articles from others and using lighter weights for sale of one's own commodities.

The vow of acaurya would not be perfect or honest unless a dealer studiously refrains from resorting to such dubious tactics. Now a days, adulteration has become so common that it is not possible to get any article of food or medicine without adultera-
tion with inferior stuff. Adulteration and use of false weights and measures have become common practices of trade.

Brahmacarya (Celibacy)

The fourth vow is brahmacarya or celibacy. Samantabhadra has stated that the vow consists in desisting from having sexual contact with other women and from abetting others to have such contact, for fear of incurring sin. A person ought to be content with a woman whom he has married in the presence of his preceptor and others. He should have no sexual desire or sensual look at other women. This vow differs from all others in its double formulation: positive in the sense of contentment with one’s own wife (sva-dāra-santoṣa) and negative as avoidance of contact with the wives of others (a-para-dāra-gamana).

Amritacandra is definitely of the view that sexual intercourse involves all round hīṃsā. He likens the act to the insertion of a hot iron rod in a tube which is filled with sesame seeds and which burns all the seeds; in the same way every intercourse kills a large number of living organisms which are constantly and continuously born in a vagina. Every indulgence of sex-passion due to lust brings about hīṃsā. It is conceded by all writers that a house-holder should be content with his own wife, if he wants to observe this vow and abstain from even entertaining sexual desires with reference to other women.

Enjoyment of women betakes of the nature of affliction because like fever it brings on craving and delirium, and exhaustion of the body. The passionate pleasure of the encounter can give no real satisfaction. Two reasons are assigned for condemnation.

24 R. Williams has mentioned aticaras of this vow given alike by Svētāmaras and Digambaras. They are virtually covered by the five aticaras mentioned by Samantabhādra. They are: i) receiving stolen goods (stenahrtadana); ii) suborning of thieves (taskara-prayoga); iii) transgressing the limits of a hostile state (viruddha-rajayati-krama); iv) using false weights and measures (kuta-tula kuta-mana); v) substitution of inferior commodities (tat-pratirupaka-vyavahara).
of all carnal contact; that in moral sense the calm of the soul is disturbed by the increase of the passions of love and hate; and that in a physical sense the sexual act is always accompanied by hiriṣā. Hemachandra has quoted from Vātsyāyana’s Kāmasūtra to support the latter view. From the earliest days of Jainism there is evidence for an almost obsessional horror of incest.

There are five (aticāras) transgressions of this vow noted by Samantabhadra: i) A householder should abstain from bringing about the marriages of other’s children (anyavivāhakarana). It is the duty of a householder to arrange for the marriage of his children. There is no fault if one regards such marriage as ceremonies and not as arrangements of copulation. ii) Toying or caressing with the parts of the body like the breasts, armpits of the female (anaṅgakṛīḍā) iii) Finding pleasure in the sensual activities of eunuch dressed in female attire; iv) Excessive inclination for enjoyment of sensual pleasures (vipulatṛṣṭaticāra); v) Frequently visiting or having conversation or dealings with, or observing bodily attractions of, a prostitute. He who wants to observe this vow both in letter and in spirit must studiously avoid all occasions of meeting women in privacy and talking of matters which are likely to stir feelings of sexual or sensual contact.

Siddhasena Ganin has been more precise in classifying sexual intercourse (maithuna) as animate (sacetana) and inanimate (acetana). The first has reference to 1) intercourse of a man with a woman (cestial, human or animal); 2) of man with another man; it includes masturbation as well as homosexuality; 3) masturbation by a woman with some artificial phallus. The latter one (acetana) refers to acts of man satisfying his sexual desires with the statue of woman (cestial, human, or animal) fashioned in plaster, wood, stone, or leather, or in the form of a painting.

All Jain philosophers have been unanimous in condemning breach of the vow of celibacy as leading to commission of various kinds of sins. It is a sin against one’s self not only
because it results in loss of bodily strength but also leads to various other sins. It is a sin against the society as it disturbs code of common ethics so essential for peace in domestic life and mutual trust. A man or woman given to adultery involves himself or herself in various kinds of deceitful acts which result in the destruction of all other virtues.

In the realm of Dharma men are by nature temperate in their sexual desires, and one should therefore remain content with one’s married wife, and leave alone the wives of others, female relations, and nuns. Study, meditation and practice of virtue are out of question so long as the fire of sexual desire burns in the mind.32

Aparigraha

Parigraha is infatuate attachment to possessions (mūrcchā parigrahaḥ).32 The desire to acquire and possess a number of worldly things like lands, house, heads of cattle, gold, silver and cash is natural to men and women. This desire should not become insensible. When attachment to such objects of possession becomes uncontrollable or unreasonable, the mind becomes affected by passions of greed and delusion; such mind becomes oblivious to right faith, knowledge and conduct. Infatuation or attachment of any kind becomes a source of evil. In safeguarding property, one is likely to resort to violence and falsehood.

The desire to possess becomes an evil when it is uncontrolled. To be free from such evil, one should voluntarily decide upon the extent of property and wealth that one should acquire and refrain from all activities of acquisition after the target is reached; this is called techāparināma-vrata.

Amritacandra Śāri defines parigraha as attachment; it is the result of delusion or operation of the mohā Karma. Complete renunciation of all sense of attachment is aparigraha. Parigraha or attachment to possession of property is either external (bahirāṅga) or internal (antarāṅga). The former has reference to actual possession of goods or living beings like slaves, servants, heads of cattle etc. Internal parigraha is of
fourteen kinds 1) wrong belief (Mithyāṭva), 2) urge for sexual enjoyment with a woman (śrīveda), 3) with a man (pum-veda), 4) with eunuchs (napumśaka-veda), 5) laughter or cutting jokes (hāṣya), 6) indulgence (rati), 7) ennui, indifference or displeasure (arati), 8) sorrow (śoka), 9) fear (bhaya), 10) disgust or hatred (jagupsā), 11) anger (krodha), 12) pride (māna), 13) delusion or deceit (māyā) and 14) greed (lobha). Though R. Williams considers that “they are in fact largely irrelevant to the consideration of the vrata,” I consider that they are relevant in emphasising how the purity of the soul becomes affected in various ways in acquisition, possession, enjoyment and protection of property consisting of both animate and inanimate objects. Attachment which is the source of parigraha will be of various kinds and intensity. Possession of female servants and slaves may lead to arousing of sexual passions and consequent desires of indulgence, laughter, sorry. Other mental states referred to as internal attachments are attributable to acquisition or protection of various kinds of objects. While greed, deceit and pride are involved in the uncontrollable thirst for accumulation, fear, anger or sorrow are aroused when one has to part with the objects.

The external objects of parigraha consist of immovable properties like houses and lands, movable properties like gold, silver, coins, jewellery, clothes, beds, items of furniture and food-grains and animate objects like the livestock and servants, both male and female. Distinction in the nature of the objects is made on the basis of their being sacitta (animate) and acitta (inanimate).

The object of the vow is that every householder should impose upon himself restrictions as to the nature and extent of objects (animate and inanimate) of possession so that there could be a check on his greed. Renunciation is the true way of life but it is not possible for everyone to follow it. Hence there is need for self-imposed limits on acquisitions.

Even after one imposes limitations on oneself, the vow could be transgressed in five ways. The aticāras have been enumerated by Samantabhadra in his “Ratnakaraṇḍa Śrāvakācāra” in verse 62.
They are ati-vāhana, ati-saṅgraha, ati-vismaya, ati-lobha and ati-bhāravāhana.

Ati-vāhana consists in driving beasts of burden like bullocks, horses etc. for a distance longer than they could go comfortably and in accordance with their capacity. This is resorted to out of greed to save money or time. The second one is ati-saṅgraha which consists in excessive hoarding of food-grains and other commodities with the expectation of making more profits. This is also an act of greed as the intention is to take advantage of conditions of scarcity. Ati-vismaya relates to feeling or entertaining a great sense of disappointment at the huge accumulations of wealth by other people either in our own country or in foreign countries. This is merely a feeling of surprise or disappointment either due to one’s own thoughts or due to thoughts expressed by other people. Ati-lobha consists in entertaining excessive greed in regard to different transactions. Obtaining high price when commodities are available elsewhere for lower price falls under this category of transgression. The last one is ati-bhāra vāhana. It consists in overloading beasts of burden to earn higher profits by way of freight charges. Most of these transgressions cover cases of acts of the tradesmen who carry on their business with the sole motive of profit. These moral codes are like cautions to persons who have taken the vow of parigraha—parimāṇa.

Ācārya Śrī Tulṣi has been the modern exponent of three doctrines under the Aṇuvrata Movement. He has emphasised that the vow of Non-violence can solve not only the personal problems but also international problems of war and peace. All the vices of modern life like lying, black-marketing, adulteration, profiteering and permissiveness can be solved by observing the five vows which form the tenets of the Religion of Humanity. He has published books and pamphlets to prove that one could find a solution for every problem of human life or for national and international problems by raising the ethical standard of individuals. The problems of capitalism versus communism can be solved by effective pursuit of the vow of aparigraha while the proper under-
standing and practice of Ahimsā can exterminate wickedness and hatred from the hearts of men as they contain the seeds of war. Mahatma Gandhi has already proved to the world that Non-violence and Truth can achieve even against the most formidable powers of the world.

Aṣṭamulagunas

Samantabhadra has stated that the eight primary virtues of a Śrāvaka or a house-holder consist of the five anuvratas and abstinence from wine, meat and honey. I have already explained the five anuvratas and their significance in the maintenance of purity of mind, thought and action.

Some authors have stated that the eight mūlagunas consist of abstinence from the five aśudumbara fruits and from meat, wine and honey. While discussing the vow of Ahimsā, mention has been made of the need to abstain from all the eight things. The five kinds of fruits of the genus Ficus: viz. gulār, anjūr, banyan, pīpal and pākar are often found filled with living organisms which are quite visible; at times such organisms are found dead, and what is more, there are a large number of seeds of very tiny variety almost indistinguishable from the tiny organisms.

Wine is prohibited as it intoxicates the individual who drinks and has a pernicious effect on his health. In the very act of fermentation, innumerable organisms are transformed into alcohol. Drinking is condemned as the root of all evils: it deludes the mind and affects the sense of discrimination. When a man is fully drunk, he becomes oblivious to all sins committed by him. Somadeva points out that wine was the cause of the ruin of Yādavas just as gambling was the cause of ruin of the Pāṇḍavas. The number of sentient beings transformed into a single drop of wine is large enough to fill the universe.

I have already discussed the grounds on which meat-eating is prohibited. Somadeva wonders how people who seek their own welfare hope to increase their own flesh with the flesh of others.
Just as one's life is dear to oneself, the birds and beasts have love for their own lives. Every one should therefore refrain from destroying animal life.  

The objection to honey is based on the ground that innumerable tiny eggs and organisms are killed in the act of pressing honey from the comb. Some writers have included butter as one among the prohibited articles of food as being abhākṣya due to the presence of invisible organisms.

**Guṇavrata**

The three guṇavrata mentioned by Samantabhadra are digvrata, anarthaḍaṇḍavrata and bhogopabhoga parimaṇa. These are intended to impose restraints of long duration on the activities of a house-holder so that the chances of his committing transgressions of other vows is considerably, if not totally, reduced. They are supplementary vows which aid the individual in his observance of the anuvratas.

i) **Digvrata**

There are ten directions: East, West, North, South, North-East, South-East, North-West, South-West, Up and Down. One should fix the limit with reference to well-known objects in each of the directions and decide for himself that he would not transgress that limit. He who thus limits his activities to the prescribed limits is sure of observing the vow of non-injury fully as regards the area lying beyond the limits fixed by him. He would be able to exercise self-restraint in all matters in relation to the area beyond the limits. There would be no occasion for breach of any of the vows. The limitations thus fixed may be for the entire life-time or for limited period of life. In fixing the directions, he may take into account the nature of his occupations and his business requirements. In such an event there would be a limit on greed also.

There are five ways in which the transgressions of the vow can occur: i) Moving in the upward direction beyond the limits set by oneself (ūrdhva-dikpramāṇatikrama). If a person has
taken the vow of not moving upward, he cannot climb a tree or mountain. He cannot travel by air also. Any upward movement beyond his own limit will amount to transgression. ii) Going deeper into the ground than the determined limits (adho-dik-pramāṇātikrama). If one has set the limits to the surface of the ground, he can neither descend into a well nor into a grain pit or mines. iii) Travelling in any of the eight directions beyond the limits (tiryag-dig-pramāṇātikrama). The limits may be fixed by well-known boundaries like rivers and mountains or by distances in terms of yojanas or miles or other measure. If the transgression is deliberate, it is called a breach of the vow (bhaṅga); if it is through forgetfulness or ignorance, it is only a transgression. iv) The fourth kind of transgression consists in extending the limits (kṣetra-vṛddhi). This refers to any attempt to evade or cross the limits either as a matter of convenience or forgetfulness. Crossing the limits through forgetfulness (smṛti-antardhāna).

ii) Anartha-danda Vrata

This is the second vow amongst the gunavratas. It means abstinence from commission of any sin in mind, by speech or conduct within the limits of the directions set up by oneself without any justification. Having once determined the limits under the dig-vrata, it is not correct to commit any act that is sinful. One should abstain from all such acts that will not advance the cause of religion. It prohibits accumulation of all accessories of violence and means of injury. One should neither keep birds and animals like cocks, hawks, cats, vicious elephants, nor means of injury like poisons, spears, arms etc. One should desist from sinful gossips, evil thoughts and sports involving injury or loss of life.

Samantabhadra says that there are five kinds of Anartha-danda: i) pāpopadeśa consists in giving such advice as will result in sinful activities such as will cause pain or suffering to animals and birds, or in carrying on their trade. Advice to beat animals or birds, or tie them down to a particular place or overload them or cut their limbs or engage the birds will amount to this sin. No advice which stimulates others to pursue harmful
activities leading to violence, theft or falsehood should be given: i) himsādāna means giving away or gifting weapons which are likely to be used for causing himsā, like axe, sword, bow, arrows, spear, shackles, poison, fire explosives, whip and gun etc. It also includes sale or lending of such weapons or articles of violence, ii) apadhyāna means cherishing ideas of evil against others such as death, misery, calamity befalling other persons or their family members. This presupposes hatred or spite against other people which in itself is a sin. It also includes entertaining lustful thoughts about other women, covering other’s riches and indulging in scandalous thought about other people; iii) duḥṣruti means listening to or expounding matters relating to various occupations like learning, trade, sculpture, riches, scriptures etc. which arouse false faith, avarice, anger, hatred and lust. Hearing stories relating to violence, superstition or lust which will arouse false beliefs or throw doubts on one’s own right beliefs are all cases falling under this category of anartha danda; iv) pramādacaryā consists in indulging in unnecessary activities like digging of the ground or stone, throwing away water or enkindling fire, cutting vegetation, causing obstruction to wind or purposeless activities. Even unnecessary travelling is required to be avoided. R. Williams has noted that Hemachandra has added other purposeless activities which ought to be avoided. “Watching dancing, displays, or theatrical representations, or listening to concerts out of curiosity... study of the “Kāmasūtras”: dicing games played in pools and water-courses (jalakārūga): gathering flowers; watching cock-fights” etc.

There are five aticāras or transgressions of anartha danda-vrata as noted by Samantabhadra: i) kandarpa means indulging in indecent language which will provoke lust or infatuation in oneself or others. One should desist from laughter mixed with derision or disgust or coarse language; ii) kautkucyā refers to commission of hateful acts actuated by vulgar thoughts and speech, or by anger; iii) maukharyana means indulging in vulgar, non-sensical and useless talk due to self-conceit or vanity; iv) atiprasādhana is accumulation of more things than are needed. According to Śvetāmbara texts, this aticāra is called samyuktādhikaraṇa which
means keeping together implements or parts thereof needed for
daily activities like agriculture etc. v) asamūkṣadhihikaraṇa relates
to useless mental or physical activities like reading or reciting
verses which incite anger or spite; or telling such stories as will
spoil the mental equilibrium and making unnecessary movements
like lifting or throwing articles, or running etc.

iii) Bhogopabhoga-parimaṇa

This vow consists in the curtailment of the use of articles of
luxury including those which might have been already limited.
Excessive use of oils, soaps, flowers, betel nuts and leaves,
unguents, articles of food and drink is prohibited.

There are two kinds of this vow: i) One is called niyama
according to which one is required to set down a time limit for the
use or renunciation of particular articles of drink or food. ii) The
other is called yama which requires abstinence from use are
enjoyment of the articles for life. Under this vow, a devotee can
vow to avoid the use of one or more things of daily use on specified
days of the week. For example, one may avoid the use of sweet
dishes or conveyances on specified days. This will increase the
will-power and self-restraint.

There are five kinds of transgressions (aticāras): a) viśayaviśatovampekaṇa means failure to check one’s love for the poison
of sensual pleasure. Enjoyment of sensual pleasures increases one’s
thirst for it and results in the deterioration of bodily strength and
purity of mind. One should therefore develop hatred for it. b) Anu-
smṛti refers to recalling to one’s mind the past experiences of sensual
enjoyment frequently. c) Atilaulya means indulging in sensual
pleasures with zest or in excess. d) Atilīśnā means cherishing a
strong thirst for enjoyment in future. e) Anubhava refers to a
mental condition in which one emotionally entertains thoughts of
sensual enjoyment, when there is none in fact.

According to Somadeva, the three vows discussed above
constitute a scheme of preliminary self-restraint designed to secure
moral purity and establish equilibrium, of the mind with regard to the worldly objects. They require a devotee to regulate his food and enjoyment. They supplement the great vow of Ahimsā and enable the devotee to develop love and affection towards all living beings.

Śiṣṭā-vratas

The regulation of work, food and enjoyment which is the object of the guṇāvratas to secure would not by themselves be sufficient to purify the mind and contribute to the spiritual advancement of the individual. If life were to be meaningful, it must be a constant exercise in righteousness and renunciation. Unless the moral and spiritual excellence of an individual are progressive both in spirit and action, there cannot be advancement in right knowledge and right conduct. While the five āpūrvratas provide a solution for the evils of daily life and endow it with purity in thought and action, the three guṇāvratas teach lessons of restraints in work, food and enjoyment in daily life. The śiṣṭāvratas broaden the mind and provide a regular opportunity for growth of scriptural knowledge. The practice of the vows is a lesson in spiritual training and experience; it affirms our conviction in the efficacy of right faith and knowledge. It inspires the votary to a life of piety and renunciation, as a preparation for a rigorous life of an ascetic.

Samantbhadra has mentioned the four śiṣṭāvratas in this order: 1) deśāvakāśika, 2) sāmāyika, 3) prosadhiopavāsa and 4) vaiyāvyātyā. It appears from the Jaina Yoga that sāmāyika is mentioned as the first Śiṣṭāvratā by all the ācāryas except Samantabhadra and Asadhara.

1) Deśāvakāśika

From the nature of this vow, it appears to me to be another aspect of digavrata. In fact, Umāsvāmi and Vasunandi regard it as a guṇāvratā. This vow requires an individual to determine and limit his movements to a house, to a part of it, to a village or a
town. The period for the observance of this vow may vary from a day to a few days, month, a few months or a year. The basic idea underlying both the dig-vrata and the desāvakāśika-vrata is that if a man reduces his freedom of movement to a restricted area, small or large, his absence from all the area, his absence from all the area not comprised within the self-imposed limits will mean that he can be said to be keeping the mahā-vratas, the rigid vows of an ascetic, in that wider area; whilst at the same time constant awareness of these spatial limits will result in added vigilance in the observation of the anuvratas within them. According to Amritacandra, this vow may be observed during a particular point of time when one shall not go beyond a certain village, market, street or house.

Samantabhadra says that one who wants to observe the anuvratas should not only go on reducing the period of movement during each day but also of the limits of areas as determined by himself. He also agrees that by such reduction of time and area, a votary of the anuvratas will have the benefit of having observed the great vratas. He mentions five aticāras of this vow: i) pṛesāna means sending a servant, friend or son to do something beyond the self-imposed limits. Such an act violates the vow by asking somebody else to move outside the limits causing harm to living organisms; ii) śabda consists in attracting the attention of people outside the limits by making sounds with the hope of getting done what is wanted; iii) ānayana relates to getting some things brought through any person from outside the limits; iv) rūpābhivyakti is employing signs and gestures to communicate with others who are outside the limits; v) pūdgala-keśa consists in throwing some tangible objects like stone, bricks, clod of earth in order to attract attention of the person beyond the limits.

2) Śāmāyika

The observance of this vow has been emphasised both by the Digambaras and by the Śvetāmbaras as an exercise for securing equanimity of mind and concentration on the contemplation of the nature of the real self. Samantabhadra defines it as
complete abstinence from the commission of the five sins in mind, thought and action during fixed time without reference to limits of space. According to him, it can be observed in a temple, house, garden or other quiet place when the mind is peaceful and happy, either by standing in a kāyotsarga posture or sitting in a padmāsana posture. The observance of this vow endows the practice of the five vows (saṃvratas) with perfection, as the householder is then free from all activities, occupational or physical.

Amritacandra says that the practice of the vow, with a mind purged from love and hatred towards all beings and with complete equanimity by contemplating on the true principles, leads to self-realisation: it should be practised in the morning and evening, though the practice of it at other times is also beneficial. Attainment of equanimity by practice of the vow will result in abstinence from sinful activities. Sāmāyika, if practised regularly, brings about equanimity of mind and mental concentration on the ātman.

The individual intending to perform the vrata must not be in fear of any one or in dispute with any one or indebted to any one, nor should there be any other cause of anxiety to sway his mind in any direction. He must, like a sādhu, observe the five samitis and the three guptis and avoid all harmful (sāvadya) speech; and before picking up or setting down any object, he must not neglect pratilekhaṇa (i.e., scanning of the ground) and pramārjana (cleaning of the ground by a soft broom carefully). He should try to avoid spitting or blowing his nose; and if he cannot help doing so, he must find out a bare patch of ground, scan it and softly clean it as aforesaid. A layman engaged in the practice of Sāmāyika looks like an ascetic but for his clothes.

Somadeva has broadened the concept of Sāmāyika as including worship of the Arhat with or without the idol, worship of the sacred scriptures by singing in praise of Sarasvati and meditation. The aspirant should sing in praise of the Jina and absorb himself in meditation of Self. Both Samantabhadra and Amrita-candra have pointed out that Sāmāyika should be practised when the aspirant is observing full or partial fast. He should think of the causes of transmigration and meditate on the pathway to salvation.
The five aticāras of this vow as mentioned by Samantabhadra are common to both the Digambara and Śvetāmbara traditions. 
a) vāg-dus-pranidhāna consists in engaging in talks about family matters when performing Sāmāyika; b) kāya-duspranidhāna refers to making such movements of the body as will affect self-restraint. Haribhadra says that transgression of the vow occurs when the aspirant fails to scrutinize the ground and clean it softly before sitting thereon; c) mano-duspranidhāna occurs when the mind is swayed by anger, deceit, pride, avarice, and envy due to anxieties of mundane affairs; d) anādara is lack of zeal or proper enthusiasm in the practice of Sāmāyika. It is also called anavasthita-karaṇa as meaning failure to observe the proper formalities in the practice of the vow; e) asmarāṇa is forgetfulness of the verses to be recited or lack of concentration.

The object of this vow is to snatch moments of detachment from worldly affairs, its cares and worries, love and hatred and above all the attainment of equanimity of mind and concentration at the time of meditation. Some writers have associated pūja and other rituals with it.

3) Prasadhopavāsa

Among the austerities prescribed by Jainism, fasting is the most conspicuous; the Jainas have developed it to a kind of art and reached a remarkable proficiency in it. Fasting has to be observed on the 8th (aṣṭami) day and 14th day (caturdaśi) of each half of the lunar month. The Digambara texts require that the fast should commence from the noon preceding the date of fast and continue till the mid-day following the fasting day, that is for a total period of 48 hours. Most of the Śvetāmbara writers mention a period of twenty-four hours only as the period of fast on the aforesaid days. The fast may be observed in one’s own home, a temple, or the, place where an ascetic is putting up. During the period of fast, there should be not only a relinquishment of all kinds of pleasures of the senses but also of participation in the house-hold affairs including trade and business. The day should be spent in worship and meditation including the reading
of scriptures. The evenings and nights should be spent in Sāmāyika and reading of scriptures. Samantabhadra says that fasting means abstinence from food, drink, tasting and licking (of some juice). There are three modes of fasting. The best mode (uttama) is complete fast or abstinence as aforesaid. The middle course (madhyama) is one in which drinking water is permitted. The least satisfactory (jaghanya) course is that of taking one meal only during the day. The Śvetāmbara texts have laid down that on fasting days, āhāraka (taking of food), deha–satkāra (bodily care), maithuna (sexual intercourse) and vyāpāra (trades or occupations) may be observed fully or partially according to the capacity of the layman.43

Samantabhadra has mentioned five kinds of breaches of this vow: 1) grāhanāticāra is acceptance of articles of worship without examining and handling them carefully; 2) visargāticāra consists in keeping articles or spreading one's body on the ground without scrutiny; 3) astaraṇāticāra refers to spreading one's bed without carefully examining and softly sweeping the place; 4) anādarāticāra consists in showing no enthusiasm in the observance of fast; and 5) asmarāṇāticāra relates to forgetting due observance of scriptural study and concentration etc.

4) Vaiyāvytya

This vow which is also known as atithi-samvībhaga vrata consists in offering alms to an ascetic on his alms-round; it also includes massaging his feet and removal of his ailments, as also rendering such service as is necessary to remove obstacles in his path of penance and renunciation. The vow is to be practised as a matter of religious duty (dharmya).

The points which are required to be considered in determining whether the vow is properly observed or not, are: 1) pātra or the recipient should be an ascetic who has been leading a life of renunciation and evokes veneration from all; 2) dārī or the donor must be a house-holder pursuing the twelve vows and advancing progressively in reaching the highest of the eleven
rungs of the ladder (pratimās); 3) dātavya or dravya refers to pure food, medicine, books and protection (abhaya); 4) dāna-vidhi consists, according to the Digambaras, of nine elements: pratigraha or welcoming an ascetic on seeing him at a distance with the words: salutations to thee, kindly stop (nāmo stū tishta); then offering him a seat of honour (ucca-sthāna); washing his feet with reverence (cārana kṣālana); then worshipping him with flowers, waving of lamp and other articles of worship (astra); and then making him salutations (prāṇāma). The offering of food should then be made with purity of mind, speech and body (trīyoga-suddhi). The giver must be possessed of faith, devotion, contentment, zeal, discrimination, disinterestedness and forbearance. 14

The Śvetāmbaras regard dāna as conditioned by five factors: deśa or place, meaning whether the place produces rice or wheat or other cereals or pulses; kāla, that is whether it is a period of famine or abundance; śuddhī, the giver must have purity of mind and faith; satkāra receiving the guest with due respect and attention; and Krama refers to serving of food in due order, rice or rice gruel is offered first. 15 Apart from the four kinds of offerings in vogue with the Digambara, the Śvetāmbaras recognise the offer of clothes, blankets, alms bowl, jugs etc. by approaching the ascetic at his lodging, inviting him to his house, offering him a respectable seat and giving him food and drink.

Samantabhadra mentions that the fruits of dāna to an ascetic consist in the purging of the karmas and birth in a noble family with wealth, beauty and prestige. The Śvetāmbaras do not seem to regard this kind of reincarnation as having any special connection with dāna. 16 Amṛtabandha is of opinion that gift of food brings about curtailment of greed and renunciation of himsā as greed itself is a form of himsā.

How much of one's property should be devoted to dāna has been discussed by Devasena. According to him, the property should be divided into six parts, each part being appropriated for the dharma, upkeep of the family, for bhoga (luxuries), for
maintenance of servants, and two parts for performance of pūjā. According to Hemacandra, a mahāśrāvaka or an ideal householder should sow his wealth in seven fields (kṣetras) with compassion for those in misery. The seven fields are: 1) the installation of Jaina images for the performance of pūjā; 2) construction of or repairs to Jaina temples; 3) copying of the sacred texts and their distribution to learned monks; 4) giving alms to monks; 5) alms to nuns; 6) charity to the laymen like construction of rest-houses, hospitals etc., and 7) charity to laywomen as above. It is worthy of note that monks, nuns, laymen and laywomen form the four pillars of the Jaina community.

The five atiśāras or breaches of the vow of vaiśāvitya as noted by Samantabhadra are: 1) haritapitdhāna is covering the food to be offered with green leaves, flowers or other sacitta things; 2) harita-nidhāna refers to offering of food in sacitta leaves; 3) anādarāticāra consists in showing disrespect or absence of respect at the time of offering food; 4) asmrāntāticāra is forgetting the method of offering or getting lost in one’s own work just in time; and 5) māśarita is feeling envy when others are offering food etc to ascetics.

It will be seen that the Jaina ethics are founded on the principle of Ahimsā and love for all living beings. While a layman ought to have a rational faith in Jains, his daily conduct must exhibit the true ideals of non-violence and truth. In his dealings, he must be upright to the core and practise charity not only by giving but also by cultivation of non-attachment towards worldly possessions. He must be constantly aware of his duties towards himself and to the society. His life as a layman should pave the way to the ultimate goal of self-realisation. Possession of perfect faith and knowledge should not be a matter of mere theory but should be constantly reflected in daily conduct.
Bibliography and References


29. *Ibid* P 93

30. *Ibid* P 86


44. *Ibid* P 153.

45. *Ibid* P 150.


47. *Ibid* P 164-5.
CHAPTER XIV

ELEVEN PRATIMAS OR STAGES OF PROGRESS IN A HOUSE-HOLDER’S LIFE

We have seen that the vows which a layman is required to practise are intended to purify him in mind and action. Mrs. Stevenson has however observed that “the twelve vows were shaped in accordance with the fixed idea of all who hold the doctrine of Karma that, though it is well to do good, it is better to do nothing. ....”¹ This is a gross misconception of the ethics which requires a layman not only to be good in himself but good to others as well. He ought to conduct himself in life in such a way as would endear him to all creatures by his love and affection. He must contribute to the material well-being of the society by his vow of aparigraha. The rules of conduct are practical; they have been so framed as to avoid personal and social conflicts in life.

A layman who is desirous of attaining to greater heights in ethical and spiritual progress can do so by regulating his way of life. The word “Pratimā” is used to designate the stages of ethical progress in a house-holder’s life. By treading the path of progress, his soul gains in purity and acquires capacity for spiritual advancement. The stages are closely connected with Guṇa-vratas and Śīlavratas, the Ānuvratas being basic to the life of Jaina layman. Though there are slight differences in the nomenclature of some of the Pratimās between the Digambara and Śvetāmbarā enumerations, there is no real difference in the content of the entire scheme of ‘progressing series’. The Pratimās are like eleven
rungs of a ladder: a layman desirous of progress must mount the ladder step by step until he reaches the top, that is, the highest stage of spirituality as a layman.

1) **Darśana-pratimā**

The house-holder must possess the right attitude and be free from all misconceptions. He must be free from all the transgressions of samyaktva and be free from attachment to worldly pleasures of every kind. He must be a devoted worshipper of the Pañca-paramestis and possess unflinching conviction in the tenets preached by the Jinas. Such a house-holder is Darśana-pratimādhāri.

2) **Vrata-pratimā**

The house-holder observes the twelve vows, that is, the five anoṛvṛatas, the three guna-vratas and the four śikṣā-vratas. There should be no transgressions of any of them. The practice of these vows should be free from the three Śalyas (defects): Māyā (delusion), Mithyā (perversity) and Nidāna (desire for worldly benefits). He who observes the vows in this manner will be called a Vrati.

3) **Sāmāyika-pratimā**

The layman turns round in four directions and performs salutations. He is not attached to the body and does not aspire for worldly prosperity. He meditates by adopting any of the two postures and maintains the purity of his activities.

This is a stage in which the aspirant practises Sāmāyika in the manner prescribed by the Scriptures. It consists of introspection and meditation for self-purification. Samantabhadra, however, adds that the practice should commence with prayer and salutation to the Jinas and be observed thrice everyday. The Śvetāmbaras hold that the practice is restricted to meditation for the purpose of purification of the soul leading to spiritual progress.
4) **Proṣadhopavāsa-pratima**

The details of this vow have already been discussed. Fasting should be observed on four days in a month, commencing on the mid-day previous to the date of fast and ending with the mid-day of the succeeding day of the fast. The entire period has to be spent in prayer, study of scriptures, meditation and hearing of religious discourses.

5) **Sacitta-tyāga pratimā**

A kind-hearted house-holder should abstain from eating roots, fruits, vegetables, tubers, green leaves, shoots and seeds which are not cooked. He should not trample upon any growing plant. He should also refrain from serving such food to others. In brief, he should avoid eating any uncooked or insufficiently cooked food stuffs. According to the Śvetāmbara books, this vow is ranked seventh in the list of Pratimās. Unboiled water as well as liquids that contain salts are prohibited. One who has reached this stage is called Sacitta-tyāga Pratimādāhāri.

6) **Rātriḥhojana-tyaga-Pratimā**

An aspirant in this stage does not eat or drink anything at night. He does not take food, water, īfīn or betel-nuts and leaves at night. Āsādhara includes abstinence from sexual intercourse during day; he seems to “cover” all inter-course unless during the ṛtu and expressly for the procreation of children.”

According to the Śvetāmbaras, the sixth stage refers to abrahma-varjana-pratimā, the layman is prohibited from having not only sexual contact but also from being alone with his wife and engaging in conversation.

7) **Brahmacarya-pratimā**

The house-holder who has reached this stage must not only observe complete celibacy considering at the same time that the sexual act involves activities of the impure human body. He
should put an end to all sexual desires also. He should desist from being alone even with his wife and recalling to his mind past experiences of sexual life. He should not take food which is likely to strengthen his sexual desires: he should not use such dress and other scents etc. that are likely to attract the attention of women. He should not read books containing stories about immoral women, attend dancing shows or witness pictures that are likely to affect his mental purity. The aspirant at this stage is called Brahmacarya Pratimādhārī.

According to the Śvetāmbara texts, abrahma-varjana pratimā is the sixth stage requiring similar restrictions on sexual life.

8) Arambha-tyāga-pratimā

All activities like agriculture, commerce, trade, service, have to be avoided. He should have limitations on his own possessions and keep for himself just what is essential for his plain living. If he has children, he must give them all their shares; what is left with himself must be used for maintenance and charity in relieving others from their misery. He should efface all thoughts of attachment from his mind and remain pure and contented. The Śvetāmbara texts do not seem to prohibit “activity exercised indirectly through agents or servants for the sake of livelihood.” The house-holder who has reached this stage is known as Ārambha-tyāga-pratimādhārī or Ārambhavinivṛtta Śrāvaka.

9) Parigraha-tyaga-Pratimā

This stage contemplates the abandonment of all kinds of attachment and becoming firmer in the conviction that there is nothing that he could call his own. He should give up ten kinds of worldly possessions: land, house, silver, gold, cattle, grain, clothes, utensils, maid-servants and male-servants. Even in matters like food, shelter and clothing, he should have no anxiety, finding contentment in the thought that everything happens according to his Karma. He should keep with himself such simple clothing as is just enough and sleep in a room or any other solitary place. He should accept food, clothing, medicine
etc when given by his people of their own accord considering his needs themselves. If possible, he should spend his time in a temple. He should engage himself in reading scriptures, offer his worship and take food at midday. This stage is preparatory to the eleventh stage.

The Śvetāmbara texts use the words Presya-tyāga-pratimā to denote this stage. It requires the aspirant to lay down the burdens of worldly life and stop carrying on any activity through servants and agents. He reduces his requirements to the minimum and cherishes a longing for final release.

He must consider himself lucky as he would be free from fear, love, greed, or conceit which are the causes of Karma. He must conduct himself as if he has secured a release from all material possessions. Such a house-holder is called Parigrāha-tyāga-pratimādhāri.

10) Anumati-tyāga-Pratimā

A house-holder who has reached this stage would have given up all his activities like trade and agriculture, his attachments to property and his concern with any of the family affairs. He should entertain no feelings of like or dislike towards food served to him. He should express neither consent nor dissent towards any of the activities or functions carried on by any of the members of his family. He is called Anumati-tyāga-pratimādhāri.

11) Uddīṣṭha-tyāga-pratimā

In this stage, the house-holder abandons his house and goes to an ascetic to receive the vows. He lives like an ascetic on alms served to him, with only a small piece of cloth round his loins. He severs his family ties. He is bare-headed and bare-footed. While begging for his food, he must observe complete silence. He should not accept invitations for food and should not accept food which is prepared for him specially. He should take his food only once in the day from the hollow of his hand and stop taking it
the moment he notices anything objectionable in the food (antarāyā). He must observe fasts and penances according to his capacity.

Uddiṣṭha-tīryāga is the tenth stage according to Śvetāmbara texts. The eleventh stage is called the Śramaṇa-bhūta-pratimā. The layman in this stage avoids food prepared for himself. He goes bare-footed. He keeps his head shaved or remove his hair by himself (loca), by tearing out. He has to carry a begging bowl and a monk's broom (raja-harana). He can beg food even from his relatives and eat only that which is permissible for an ascetic.

This is the highest stage of discipline for a house-holder. He abandons his family house and renounces everything that belonged to him. He takes vows from his ascetic Guru and goes to a forest or a lonely place for shelter. He wears only a piece of cloth and lives on food begged for.

An ideal house-holder passes through the eleven stages gradually by accepting the vows and observing the rules of discipline that are prescribed for each stage. The mind has to be prepared by strict observation of the requirements of one stage before passing on to the next one. It therefore follows that the progress which a house-holder can achieve would finally depend upon his own convictions and faith in the Jaina philosophy. Psychologically, there cannot be a sudden change in life from the stage of material attachments to one of renunciation. The eleven stages of discipline involving practice of rigorous mental and spiritual austerities is quite practical and worthy of realization by every aspirant.

Amongst the house-holders who have reached the eleventh stage of Pratimā there are two classes, i.e. kṣullaka and aitaka. None of them would accept food specially prepared for him. The former may remain in that status without being finally initiated into the order of a monk while the latter is like one who is on probation as an ascetic. Both of them beg for alms but the latter
normally dines after the ascetic whom he accompanies has finished his food. Both of them are to accompany the ascetic and render him all the services with the same devotion as vairavṛtya. The former wears a laṅgoṭi (a piece of cloth to hide the nudity) and a white piece of cloth of three cubits in length and of single width, while the latter wears only a laṅgoṭi. The latter has to remove his hair by loca while it is open to the former to shave his hair. Both of them are to observe full prosadhopavāsa on four days of the month. They are not expected to practise penance on a hill-top or engage in other rigorous austerity under a tree during rains or on the bank of a river. The aṅkā has to eat from the palm of his hand. Both of them have to carry a peacock’s soft feather-bunch for cleaning the ground before sitting or sleeping. It is open to a kṣullaka to use a bowl for taking his food; he can sit down while taking his food.

The final stage of a house-holder is thus a preparation for asceticism. The highest point of house-holder’s discipline has been reached and he has renounced everything that is his own including his kith and kin. He practically performs all the austerities and awaits his initiation into asceticism.

It would be obvious that the eleven stages are scientifically conceived. The graded steps have to be climbed one after the other only after the house-holder has been firm in the preceding step or steps. The climbing commences with the Right Faith, and progress is achieved only when he is prepared to observe the more difficult vows and rules of conduct.
Bibliography and References

1. Stevenson, Mrs. Sinclair: *Heart of Jainism*, p. 222.
   Humphrey Milford, Oxford University Press, London.
There is no dearth of religions and philosophical doctrines in the world. What the world needs today is the sincere practice of those doctrines in daily life. In the hands of the priesthood, every religion becomes a ritual; with the ignorant, it becomes a mass of superstitious beliefs; it thus loses its scientific foundation.

The Jaina thinkers have taken care to see that religion becomes a way of life with a clear stream of reason to sustain it. In order that one should not lose sight of the ten supreme virtues in daily life, tradition has prescribed a festival, called “Daśalakṣaṇa-parva” to be observed for ten days devoting a day for the contemplation of one virtue. The Digambaras observe the festival from the fifth day of the lunar half of the month of Bhādrapada. The Śvetāmbaras observe it as Paryuṣaṇa-parva from the full moon day of the month of Aṣāḍha. The days are spent in fasting,
contemplation and study of the scriptures, particularly the Tattvārtha Sūtra. The object is to purify the mind and exert for the subsidence of the Karmas.

A brief reference has already been made to these virtues while discussing the topic of stoppage and shedding of Karmas. These ten virtues have been enumerated in Sūtra 6 of Chapter IX of the Tattvārtha Sūtra as follows:

"Uttamakṣamāmārdavārvajavisatyāsaucasānyamata-pastyāgākiṇcanyabhramacaryāni dharmah."

Supreme forbearance, humility, straightforwardness, truthfulness, purity, self-control, austerity, renunciation, non-attachment and celibacy constitute the religion or duty. These ten virtues are intended to regulate the activities of mind, thought and action. Their practice or observance gives direction to the life of a votary by eliminating all his evil thoughts and preventing him from harmful actions. The word uttama or supreme ought to be read along with each of the virtues implying there by that the practice should be of the highest order or in full measure. There should be no expectation of any earthly reward except that of attaining purity and spiritual advancement. It is appropriate to discuss them in the order in which they are enumerated above.

1) Uttama Kṣamā or Supreme Forbearance.

Supreme forbearance or forgiveness is a divine virtue. There are numerous occasions in life when the peace of mind is disturbed by anger due to the conduct of other people or by force of circumstances resulting in ill-treatment or insults. Each individual has his own weaknesses: at times, one is provoked to injure the feelings of others or be injured by others. Wisdom consists in maintaining peace of mind without getting mentally disturbed: this is called forbearance. For an ascetic, there might be situations when he is abused; insulted or rebuked by people who are opposed to his way of life or nudity. He must bear everything calmly and think within himself that all such display of temper is due to
ignorance of the importance of the codes of saintly life and that he should forgive all those who might be prone to cause him mental or physical pain.

Bhagavān Mahāvīra was once questioned by his disciple: "Sire, what does the soul get by practice of forgiveness?" He replied: 'By forgiveness, the mind gets peace and kindness of disposition; kind disposition, creates affection towards all living creatures; by an affectionate disposition the mind becomes pure; by purity, it becomes fearless."

Anger is the chief enemy of self happiness, self-restraint and detachment are all the qualities of the soul. Anger destroys all these qualities and degenerates the quality of the soul. Anger puts the mind out of gear and one does not know what a person who loses his balance of mind will do in a moment of heat. Most of the misdeeds and criminal actions are committed when persons are overcome by anger. Anger dries up the very springs of humanism. A person in anger might act like a beast and thus lose all the best qualities of the mind and the heart.

Angry words are the expressions of a perverted mind; such words cause pain to others and entangle their author into sins. They can be controlled by patience which is the outcome of wisdom and forbearance.

Kāmā is another word in Sanskrit for the earth; she patiently bears all the inroads that are committed by people; she offers fruits and protection to all living beings. Anger begets hatred; hatred begets enmity; enmity is the cause of sustained misery to all parties concerned. Patience and forbearance can be acquired by observance of the vow of Ahimsā. Forgiveness is a divine quality. When Jesus Christ was crucified, he said "Forgive them, Father, they know not what they are doing." Mahatma Gandhi breathed a word of forgiveness towards his assassin before his death. Thus forgiveness begets love and brings peace of mind. It stops the influx of new Karmas and helps to purge off the old ones. Peace and happiness are the most enviable possessions of man; they are lost by anger but regained by forgiveness.
Forgiveness is the most powerful armour of man. The law of Karma lays down: reap as you sow. Anger and violence are the chief causes of war and unhappiness. Man can regain peace and happiness by non-violence and forgiveness. They are the manifestations of the true Self and therefore their practice in life is the highest religion. He who endures, forbears and forgives knows his religion and remains free from sin: for, he has learnt the greatest lesson in righteousness.

2) Uttama Mārdava or Supreme Humility.

Mārdava or softness means humility in word and deed; it brings in freedom from self-conceit and makes man kind in his heart and meek in his disposition. Modesty is born of true education and culture. Pride or self-conceit is the greatest enemy of true knowledge, faith and understanding.

Pride or self-conceit is of eight kinds: pride of one’s own caste, pride of the family in which one is born, pride of personal physical beauty, pride of learning which one might have acquired, pride of the extent of wealth possessed by oneself, pride of scriptural knowledge one might have acquired, pride of worldly gains and pride of one’s strength of body. Any one of these is sufficient to pervert a man’s outlook on life; it may breed rudeness and bad temper. A proud man normally becomes intolerant and blind to what is good in others. When a man becomes intoxicated with any of these causes of pride, he might indulge in self-adulation and belittle others. He might demean them and, invite anger and hatred. A self-conceited person involves himself into fruitless disputes and makes enemies of others due to his harshness of speech and conduct.

Humility is the source of compassion while conceit dries it up. Humility in man or woman shines like a diamond in any company. While it enhances reverence towards the great sages, saints and wise men, it begets admiration and respect in other people. It destroys all misconceptions and wrong knowledge while creating a thirst for acquisition of right knowledge and conduct. The mind
becomes free from prejudices and dislikes and gains in purity of thought and action. It adds dignity to one’s personality and enhances one’s prestige.

Everything that spoils the purity of mind and thought is the result of bad Karma. So is pride. Therefore all efforts should be made to overcome that weakness and stop further sinning by proper self evaluation. Humility is only one aspect of Right Faith; it is dawn of Right Knowledge which infuses the true values of life. A person with such knowledge would regard all objects as passing phases of worldly existence and would realise that there is no reason for being proud of any of them. None of them can conduct to his spiritual well-being or advancement. He would discard them as wasteful objects of material life, retarding the progress of the soul. One should constantly endeavour to be free from all conceits and acquire such faith and knowledge as will bring about subsidence of accumulated Karmas.

3) Uttama Ārjava or Supreme straightforwardness

Uprightness in conduct is the hallmark of every good person. Every good man is consistent in his thoughts, words and deeds while the reverse is the case with a bad person. Consistency is a virtue and inconsistency is a vice. It is only a person of veracity that can practise true religion because religion requires him to be honest with himself and with others. To be straightforward is to be free from cunning, duplicity, ambiguity and evasiveness in thoughts, words and deeds. “By simplicity he will become upright in actions, thoughts and speech and he will become veracious; and thereby he will practise the law” says Bhagavān Mahāvīra.2

Straightforwardness in dealings is the key to success in worldly life. It evokes confidence and trust in others. It conduces to clarity of intellect and purity of thought. It leads to honesty of purpose of thought and action. The mind of such a person will always be peaceful. He would not have any occasion for anger which is root cause of physical and mental ailments.
Deceit and cunning bring in the influx of new Karmas because they defile the mind and thoughts. When detected, they bring disgrace and loss of personal prestige. A straightforward person will have no quarrels with others and his mind would be free from passion or greed. He would be able to purge off his sins and prevent the influx of new Karmas. He would be friendly with everybody and would have no occasion to give offence to anybody.

4) **Uttama Satya** or Perfect Truthfulness

The topic of “truth” has been already discussed under the title of five **Anuvratas**. The fact that it is again included in the category of ten noble virtues only indicates that Jainism attaches very great importance to it as its practice in everyday life is the key to purity of life. Mahatma Gandhi regarded Truth and Non-violence as the basis of private and public life. Both are like two sides of a coin. Truth is the law of our being. He was a great seeker after Truth and was bent upon finding it. To him, truth was identical with God. Truth is what the voice within tells you, says Gandhiji. Truth cannot be be realised by one who has no humility. “Where there is no Truth, there can be no true knowledge.” Truth, like bliss, is eternal... Out of Truth emanate love, tenderness and humility. A votary of Truth has to be humble as the dust. His humility increases with the observance of Truth.¹

Truth is the virtue of the pure; it is simple and free from bitterness or arrogance; it does not suffer from the weakness of falsehood or scandal. A truthful man is always gentle but firm; he does not waver in his talk because he is free from fear or anger.

Truth always triumphs. It wins the confidence and trust of others. It forms the basis of a good deeds in the world. Without it, there can be no real progress of the individual or the community at large.

Utterance of truth should be avoided where the result is likely to bring harm to another. It should also be avoided where
it is likely to be the cause of misfortune to another. Those who speak the truth must do it in sweet words so as not to irritate others.

The Uttarādhyayana Sūtra speaks of bhāva-satya, Karana-satya and Yoga-satya which respectively mean sincerity of mind, sincerity of religious practices and sincerity of action. Sincerity of thought or truthfulness purifies the mind and helps the individual fully in the practice of religion: sincere practice of religion frees the individual from accumulated Karmas and stops the influx of new ones. Truthful actions produce happiness and love.

5 Uttama Śauca or Supreme Purity.

Purity cleanses the mind from craving and greed and begets contentment and equanimity. Purity or cleanliness of external body without the corresponding internal purity serves no purpose. Internal purity is often obscured by anger, greed, pride and infatuation. Real purity of the soul consists in getting rid of all these weaknesses which are the sources of all misery in the world. The self is different from the body; and cravings of the senses should never be allowed to defile the purity of the soul.

Perfect faith and knowledge are essential for the purity of mind and thought. Without them, the cravings of existence, of the senses, of the body and of enjoyment are likely to mislead us from the right path. Purity cannot be achieved unless these are controlled and subdued. Every fall from the path of Ahimsā, truth, honesty, celibacy and non-attachment results in defilement of the soul and therefore hastens the influx of new Karmas. So the observance of the five vows is the sine qua non for purity of soul.

In normal life man gets busy in the acquisition of wealth and power since he considers that they will help him in the acquisition of all the luxuries of life for worldly enjoyment. In doing so, he has to indulge in activities which involve him into passionate and impure thought. He becomes unmindful of the harm he causes in gaining his selfish ends; he invites hatred from others and creates
bitterness. Life becomes a turmoil and he loses his balance of mind in struggle. He begins to think ill of others and others begin to think ill of him. There would be bad blood and both sides giving birth to a sense of vengeance against each other.

Such ways of living become a constant source of influx of bad Karmas and negative the purpose of human existence. It is difficult to be born a human being and the opportunity ought to be utilised for betterment, for the subsidence of the Karmas and for self-realization. No one can prolong his life, and adherence to wrong principles ensnares the soul into numerous transmigrations through lower strata of births and deaths. The only escape is in acquisition of virtues and maintenance of an awareness of the goal of life.

We can realise the goal of life by acquisition of purity of life by acquisition of purity of life by self-control and conquest of desires and cravings, so that the body can only be an instrument for purification of the soul.

6 Uttama Samyama or Perfect Self-restraint

Abstinence from injurious thoughts and actions and from entertainment of sensual thoughts, or restraint from indulgence in sensual pleasures is self-restraint. This stops the influx of new Karmas. It is the foundation of good character. With self-restraint, one can attain mastery over oneself and control all passions.

RestRAINT in thoughts, speech and action is self-restraint; that is the basis of pure life and of religion. It is difficult to attain self-restraint. It requires faith in religion or at least in ethical conduct: if this is backed up by the company of good people or fine moral traditions at home and in the immediate surroundings, then acquisition of self-restraint becomes easy. Today we notice that we are in the midst of a society where laxity in thought and action is the order of the day. Any one who advocates self-control in life is ridiculed as an orthodox person. The values seem to have changed because every one seems to have
love for free life. It cannot be denied that Indian culture has always emphasised that self-restraint is essential to prevent inroads into the peaceful life of other people. If tendency towards free life is not restrained in time, one is likely to drift towards a life of ease and sensual pleasures. Cultivation of self-restraint then becomes an impossibility.

To give up oneself to such life is to lose the dignity of human personality and greatness. The mind becomes overwhelmed with passionate thoughts and loses all its strength. It then becomes impossible to regain balance of thought and purity of conduct. An individual who becomes a victim of such situation will never be able to subdue his mind and subdue the evil Karmas which entangle him into a life of misery and continued transmigration. In that event, one cannot regain the chance of human birth which is the only opportunity for destruction of bad and good Karmas. The pleasures of worldly life are undoubtedly fleeting but no one can predict to what stage of degradation a man might sink before he can awake to his senses. Like an insect which is attracted by a light and embraces it only to fall down dead, a person who is attracted to a life of sensual enjoyment emerges physically and morally bankrupt.

Renunciation in a lesser or greater degree is the beginning of self-restraint. The world is full of objects of glamour to the different senses and it is only a person who is constantly conscious of the dangers of licentious life that can control himself from a fall. It is constant awareness to the pitfalls of life that can ever keep an individual vigilant on the path of righteousness. Without self-restraint, an individual will be blindly sacrificing his good fortune of having been born a human being and lose an invaluable gem of life for a piece of glowing glass. Without self-restraint, the intellect and the body will not work to achieve the spiritual advancement even in the slowest possible manner.

It is axiomatic that without full control of thought and mind, one cannot achieve real renunciation. Austerities, fasts and penances are futile without the internal purity. Introspection and
repentance accompanied by right conduct rooted in right faith and knowledge can alone help the soul to become free from the Karmas of different kinds.

7 Uttama Tapas or Supreme Austerity

Practice of penance in order to destroy the accumulated Karmas is austerity. External austerities are of twelve kinds while the internal austerities are of six kinds. According to Umasvami, the external austerities are: fasting, reduction of diet, restrictions on begging food, abstinence from delicious and stimulating foods or dishes, lonely habitation and mortification of the body. We have already seen that Jainism attaches great importance to fasting as it promotes self-control, destruction of attachment of Karmas; it is an occasion for meditation, scriptural study and spiritual advancement. Control over diet is good not only for maintenance of sound health but also for development of self-control, contentment and studious habits of life. Restriction on the number of houses in begging for food is intended for the ascetics. Avoidance of delicious and stimulating foods is quite essential for a quiet life of restraint; it curbs excitement of the senses and facilitates to observance of sexual restraint. An ascetic has to choose a habitation which is lonely so that he could lead an undisturbed life of celibacy, study and meditation. Mortification of the body is also for those who observe penance to be free from attachments and pleasures, while meditating on the self.

Expiation, reverence, service, study, renunciation and meditation are the internal austerities. These are for training the mind. Repentance for the past sins committed through negligence or under the influence of passions is expiation. Reverence towards the saints and rendering them useful service are other mental disciplines intended to purify the mind. Acquisition of spiritual knowledge by diligence is another internal austerity. Effacement of the ego is renunciation while concentration of all thoughts on the nature of self is meditation.
Observance of austerity is the stepping stone to attainment of spiritual strength or greatness. One has to withdraw oneself from a life of sensual pleasures and achieve detachment from the lure of material possessions. The detachment must be complete, both external and internal. Human life would not be worth living unless the soul advances to some extent at least by the subsidence of Karmas. The greatest difficulty in life is to secure freedom from infatuation. Since passions pervert the soul, austerity is the sole means of getting rid of them. It is only by reaching the pinnacle of austerity that the great souls attained salvation. Every one can practise penance to the extent possible, regard being had to one's mental and spiritual capacity.

Jainism attaches the greatest importance to penance. Enrichment of the qualities of the soul is real penance. It is by penance that one destroys the accumulated Karmas and obtains purity of mind and thought.6

8 Uttama Tyāga or Complete renunciation

It is a difficult virtue in practice. In this world, man is normally judged from his wealth, power and position. All forms of acquisition of wealth are attended with some craving, if not greed. The first stage of cultivating this virtue is to possess a strong determination against acquisition. The second step is that of renunciation by making donations and gifts to good causes. Jainism lays down that every house-holder should practise some charity in providing food, shelter, medicine and learning to the needy. All or some forms of charity have to be practised everyday. Charity blesses him that gives and consoles him that accepts. He who spends all his time only in accumulation will be absorbed in passions of greed and craving; he will have no thought of the soul and of his release from the meshes of the Karmas. Constant thoughts of covetousness without any idea of charity would lead to further influx of inauspicious Karmas.

A stingy man will be an object of scandal and spite. A charitable person will be respected by the society and will be able to
lead a life of contentment as he will have neither fear nor greed to disturb his peace of mind. It should be remembered that the world lives on the charities of good men. We have more poor people in every country than than the rich. So a social obligation is cast on every individual to part with something of what he possesses. While fulfilling this social and moral obligation by extensive or liberal charity, the donor should not entertain pride or vanity: he should not utter anything that will hurt the donee or subject him to insult of some kind.

While giving, the mind should be full of joy and thoroughly free from the slightest idea that he is parting with something that is his own. It fact, nothing is ours except that we have parted with; what is left behind when we take leave of the world belongs to others.

Aparigraha or non-possessiveness which is one of the five Anuvratas has already been discussed and much of what has been said on the subject would apply with equal appropriateness to the subject of renunciation.

9 Uttama Ākiñcanya or Complete Non-attachment

He who has nothing is akiñcana. To entertain such a thought is ākiñcanya. In this world, there is nothing that one can legitimately call his own. Even the body is not his own as it is independent of the soul. The body is only an instrument for the practice of Dharma or religion. It is perishable. The object of this virtue is that every one should firmly know as a matter of faith and ultimate reality that the ātman has nothing that he can call his own, that he is infinite knowledge and bliss, that everything else like the body, the relatives, the caste, the family etc belong to the body and that it is only by cherishing such ideas that he can achieve the noble goal of life.

The suppression of the ego is most difficult and impossible for ordinary human beings. An individual’s life is constantly fed by the ideas of “I”, “myself” “mine” and “ours”. Such ideas are germinal to worldly existence and are in reality the results
of our Karmas. Ākiñcanya, if gradually developed in the mind and practised, is the surest path to asceticism of the highest order. That is the first lesson in the attainment of godhood.

10 Ultama Brahmacarya or Supreme Celibacy

This subject has been discussed while dealing with the five small vows or the pañca-ānuvratas. Constant awareness of the Ātman or Brahman without being distracted by sensual pleasures is Brahmacarya. Sexual passion destroys the stability of mind. Passion of any kind is dangerous to spiritual progress. Craving for sexual enjoyment, if unbridled, leads to commission of all kinds of sins. Like all other vices, it is practised in secrecy; to cover it up, many acts which are both morally and legally condemnable are being perpetrated. The only escape from the multiplication of sins is the observance of this virtue.

These ten noble virtues form part of Jaina ethics. It is often said that virtue is its own reward. It simply means this: whether one recognises or respects an individual for such virtues or not, their cultivation and practice will elevate the soul and contribute to his social well-being. The evil propensities of the mind are curbed and the ruinous passions are destroyed. An individual who has acquired these virtues gets his reward in the form of spiritual advancement of his own soul. He is freed from ignorance and passions and achieves firmness in Right Faith and conquers all wickedness. All these virtues are inherent characteristics of every soul. What is inherent has to be understood and realised.

That is the object of the Jaina ethics. These are not negative codes, though they involve the negation of what is wicked and harmful to the self and to the society. They cover every aspect of human activity and lay down very practical rules for guidance. Goodness is conquest of evil.

The basis underlying this thought is that the universe consists of souls and matter, and their combination, producing different forms of living beings, is responsible for the entire phenomena,
One cannot be changed into the other. Spirit or soul is all consciousness. It is possible for a soul to free itself from the bondage of Karmas and attain perfection. The Karmas can be annihilated and the influx of the new ones stopped. The entire ethical code of Jainism is intended to bring about that result by creating an awareness of the supreme need to acquire right faith and knowledge so that the conduct may be a manifestation of the inner goodness or the truth and beauty of the soul within.

The ten virtues are like the ten inextinguishable lamps which light the path of life; they drive away, when practised, all darkness or wickedness and make the journey smooth. Forgive all living creatures so that you shall be ever forgiven. Practise humility so that you can know more than what meets the eye. Be straightforward and you will have no occasion to fear anybody. Purity of mind and thought will ever keep life vigilant. Truth will always triumph. Self-control is an invincible armour. Austerity is an unfailing key to inner strength and enlightenment while renunciation and non-attachment always lift up an individual from the pitfalls of life. Chastity or celibacy is nothing but a strong urge to know the Self and to prevent it from being dragged by unbridled passions to fall into an abyss of lower life.
Bibliography and References


CHAPTER XVI

ETHICS FOR ASCETICS

Human birth on earth is difficult to obtain. When once it is obtained, our aim should be to utilize the opportunity for spiritual advancement by the annihilation of Karmas, rather than for mechanical and material enjoyment of all pleasures of the senses which our wealth, position or power can place at our command. In the previous chapter, there is brief survey of the eleven stages (pratimās) of progress as laid down for a house-holder; it lays down a graduated scheme of elevation leading to the path of renunciation. It is no doubt true that the rules laid down for Perfect Conduct are hard and arduous; but they are a preparation for the life of an ascetic if one can reach the highest stage. "A time does come, and will come, in the life of everyone who is impressed with the Right Faith, when he will not be able to restrain himself from adopting them. Till that time does come there is no compulsion of any kind whatsoever, and one need only undergo as much of the disciplinary training as one likes."

The march from the stage of a house-holder to reach the stage of an ascetic involves complete detachment from mundane affairs and severance of all connections with the kith and kin, having achieved victory over the senses and the mind. At the end, permeating his mind with five types of ascetic discipline namely, jñānācāra, dārśanācāra, cāritrācāra, tapācāra and vṛtyācāra, he prostrates before a great saint who is adorned with mystic
characteristics, who abounds in virtues, who is associated with a family of distinction, who possesses an attractive physical form, who is endowed with mature age, who is bereft of mental insobriety and who is honoured and extolled by other saints. He then beseeches him to initiate."

A person is thus initiated as an ascetic and with his initiation, he becomes naked, pulls out his hair with his own hands and commences practising the great vows and austerities. Jainism lays great emphasis on internal purity, as impurity of the soul even in the slightest degree retards its progress. Therefore, the vows and austerities which an ascetic had been observing as a householder are required to be practised with full faith and utmost firmness. He must possess and practise 28 basic qualities or Mūla-gūnas. They are: The five great vows of 1) Ahimsā, 2) Satya or truthfulness, 3) Asteya or honesty, 4) Brahmacarya or celibacy, 5) Aparigraha or non-possessiveness, the five Samitis (great care): 6) carefulness in walking, 7) carefulness in speaking, 8) carefulness in receiving alms, 9) carefulness in keeping things on the ground or lifting them, 10) carefulness in the choice of place for answering calls of nature. Then he has to control the five senses of 11) touch, 12) taste, 13) smell, 14) seeing, and 15) hearing. Besides, he has to observe the six essential duties: 16) repentance, 17) renunciation, 18) confession, 19) expiation, 20) non-attachment to the body, 21) contemplation during fixed hours every day regularly. Besides, there are seven external observances: 22) removal of hair with one’s own hands periodically, 23) nakedness, 24) no bathing, 25) non-cleansing of teeth, 26) taking food while standing, 27) only one meal a day and 28) sleeping on bare ground.

An ascetic takes precautions not to violate these Mūlagūnas; and in case he violates them, he duly approaches his teacher, reports and confesses the sin, and adopts the lustral course. Negligence is his greatest enemy, so he keeps himself constantly alert. Not only he has no attachments at all, but he is absolutely
indifferent to the world and its allurements. His eye is on liberation; so he constantly struggles to maintain a pure attitude of mind, and cultivates faith, knowledge and discipline. His preachings and his other activities are all directed towards spiritual advancement. Being a Nirgrantha, he practises no profession. The rigorous type of Nirgrantha asceticism is not prescribed for women because of their natural disabilities. They can enter the order but their observances are moderate and less rigorous.  

The five Vratas namely, ahimsā, satya, asteya, brahmacharya and aparigraha which a house-holder observes in a small way are required to be observed with the fullest of their implications without permitting any of the transgressions noticed earlier while discussing the Pańca-апuvratas. It is not enough if an ascetic abstains from physical injury to any mobile or immobile living creatures; he must observe the vow in mind, speech and action (conduct) so that he exhibits the highest degree of caution and care in his movements, thoughts, food and drinks. The vow of truthfulness requires him to be free from anger, greed, fear and delusion so that anything he utters is free from the taint of impurity of any kind. The vow of Asteya or non-stealing has to be observed not only by refraining from acceptance of what is not given but also by observing the self-imposed limitations in the matter of begging for food, acceptance of food and drink of great purity in quantities lesser than he needs and in the choice of his abode which ought to be in any forest or secluded place. The vow of celibacy does not stop with abstinence from sexual intercourse. He must not entertain any thought of sex or passion. He should not take any food which is likely to incite his passion; he should not think of any woman nor give any cause by talk or gesture so as to excite passion in himself or in the woman. He should not try to relive his past sexual contacts. Aparigraha or non-attachment does not only mean non-attachment to external objects and property but includes non-attachment to the body or its requirements. He must annihilate his desires and should attach no greater importance to the body than to regard it as an instrument for practice of Dharma and realisation of the three
Jewels. Even the three articles which he is permitted to possess viz., a book (jānopaḍhi) a peacock feather bunch (śamyaṃopaḍhi) and a pot for water normally made of wood (śaucopaḍhi) should have no attraction for him. In short, he should have an attitude of non-attachment, complete and thorough, both for sentient and non-sentient objects.

Besides the five Mahāvrataḥ whose full and comprehensive amplitude has been indicated while discussing the five anuvṛataḥ, he must observe the five kinds of careful behaviour (samitis). These are intended to train his mind and conduct so that they shall be in conformity with his other vows. They are: 1) Irya-samiti is going by paths trodden by men, beasts, carts etc., and looking to the ground carefully while walking so as not to occasion the death of any living being. 2) Bhaṣa-samiti consists in gentle, salutary, sweet, righteous speech; 3) Esāna-samiti means receiving alms in a manner to avoid the forty-two faults that are laid down. 4) Adāna-samiti consists in receiving and keeping of things necessary for religious exercises, after having carefully examined them; 5) Utsarga-samiti requires performance of the operations of nature (that is, nature's calls) in an unfrequented place.4 Jacobi has called the five samitis and three guptis as the eight articles of creed (pravacana-māṭrikās) as they are intended to inculcate self-restraint which is so essential for subjugation of passions and for spiritual development. The observance of the samitis ensures regulation of movements with utmost carefulness and helps one to avoid injury to organisms.

The walking of a well-disciplined monk should be pure in four respects: the cause, the time, the road and the effort. The cause is: knowledge, faith and right conduct, implying thereby that his walking should have a purpose and be guided by considerations of furthering the acquisition of the three Jewels. He shall neither walk aimlessly nor carelessly. The time of his walk is day-time only. The road that he chooses must be well-trodden excluding all bad roads with grass and other vegetable growth on it. With regard to the effort, the monk should look ahead to a
distance of four hands as long as he walks. While paying attention to his walk, he should avoid anger, pride, deceit, greed, laughter, fear, loquacity and slander. He should use blameless and concise speech. When he hoes out for his food, he should avoid faults in the search and receiving of his food, articles of use and lodging. Faults with regard to the food refer to it having been prepared solely for the monk, containing impurities or prepared for festivity, use of lamp in fetching food, etc. In the selection of a place for his excrements, urine etc., he must choose a place which is neither frequented nor seen by people, which offers no obstacles to his self-control, which is not covered with grass or leaves and which is an inanimate spacious layer, free from insects and seeds. It would thus be evident that the samitis are an exercise in carefulness and regulation of every kind of movement so as to avoid every kind of injury to other beings.

Gupti is defined as control curbing well every kind of activity (samyag yoganigraho guptib). The Guptis are three: Mano-gupti, vāg-gupti and kaya-gupti. The first relates to the control of the mind by preventing it from wandering into the forest of sensual pleasures. A monk ought to restrain his mind and should never entertain thoughts that would bring misfortune to other beings or cause ruination of other people. The second requires him to control his speech from lying or telling mixed falsehood. He should not use abusive language or language that is likely to be harmful to others. He should observe silence and should not say anything ill about others. In the use of his body, he ought to be careful while standing, moving or lying down so that he does not cause misery to or destruction of any creature. There should be no room for evil actions, thoughts or bodily activity all the activities of a monk ought to be for the good of himself and of others.

We next come the control of the five senses of touch, taste, smell, sight and hearing. There is a constant conflict between the dictates of the soul and of the senses. If we yield to the latter, they bring about transmigration while if we yield to the former,
we move towards liberation. Yogindudeva has most effectively illustrated how submission to one sense or the other leads to destruction. A beautiful butterfly which is attracted by the beauty of a light from a lamp embraces and dies. A stag which is attracted by sound caused by a hunter falls a prey to his arrow and dies. An elephant which desires to have cold touch falls into a pond and is relegated to slavery. A bee which is attracted by smell of a lotus is caught into it and dies when the lotus closes at sunset. A fish which is drawn towards the delicious bait thrown by a fisherman tries to snatch it and is caught. Thus the different senses, if not controlled by self-restraint, would toll the death knell without any hope of liberation. That is why an ascetic ought to exercise the fullest control over his senses. An ascetic ought to refuse to be seduced by his senses since he knows that none of his senses leads to the liberation of his soul. Neither beauty, nor musical sounds, nor fragrance nor sweetness as felt by his ears, nose or tongue, nor the softness of touch which are all pudgala should be allowed to dominate his practice of austerities.

The six āvāṣyakas or the essential duties, which have a bearing on the advancement of the spiritual well-being of the soul, ought to be performed everyday without fail. They constantly remind the ascetic of his goal in life and purify the inner self. Kundakunda Ācārya has enumerated them as follows in his “Niyamasāra”: pratikramana, pratyākhyāna, ālocana, kāyotsarga sāmāyika and paramabhakti.

1) Pratikramana is repentance. Self-analysis or introspection is essential for equanimity of mind and for right conduct. That man observes Pratikramana, who in silence after abstaining from the activities of speech and getting rid of his impure thought-activities such as anger, attachments etc, meditates upon the nature of his own soul. This helps him to avoid repetition of impure thought-activities and transgressions of rules of conduct. He would avoid all wrong paths and walk into the paths shown by the Conquerors. He learns how to control himself in body,
thought and speech, he entertains only righteous thoughts avoiding all painful and evil thought activities. Thus renouncing all ways of evil thoughts, he acquires Right Faith and Right Conduct. He learns about the supremacy of the soul and engages himself in self-concentration. In short, he recounts his lapses and transgressions of the rules of righteous conduct and thoughts committed during the day and directs the pure thought-activities of his soul towards concentration and realisation of the pure self.

2) Pratyākhyāna is renunciation from all worldly thoughts. He frees himself from all passions, bravely meets all temptations, and keeps himself away from auspicious thoughts that are the cause of transmigration. It signifies a firm determination to avoid the pitfalls of evil Karmas. In real renunciation, the soul takes shelter in the pure nature of one's own self and is not allowed to be obsessed by any other idea which does not relate to itself. In this kind of renunciation, a saint realises himself to be all-knowing, all-powerful and all-blissful. He himself becomes pure consciousness personified.

3) Ālocanā is confession which consists in the saint meditating upon his own soul being free from quasi Karmas no-Karmas and Karmas, and devoid of the non-natural attributes and modifications which attend normally a worldly soul. Confession is of four kinds: Ālocanā, Ālūncana (eradication), avikrtikarana (non-deformity), and bhāvāsuddhi (purity of thought). Alocanā is achieving equanimity to realise the soul. Ālūncana or eradication is acquisition of capacity to eradicate all Karmas. He who realises his soul by acquisition of its attributes and equanimity by shedding off of the Karmas is said to practise Avikrtikaranā or non-deformity. Bhāvāsuddhi or purity of thought is acquired by conquest of lust, pride, deceit and greed. It is only by the practice of these four kinds of confessions that a saint can achieve real spiritual progress and attain liberation from bondage of the Karmas.

4) Prāyaścitta or expiation consists in the observance of the five vows, the five kinds of carefulness, self-control and attentive-
ness to the restraints of senses. Real expiation however consists in the contemplation of the soul by destruction of all kinds of impurities of mind and thoughts, and meditation of attributes of the soul. A saint should conquer anger by forgiveness, pride by humility, deceit by straightforwardness and greed by contentment. A faultless observance of the austerities is part of expiation. The main object of practising expiation is to reduce or eradicate defects in the observance of all vows and austerities so that there could be complete stoppage of conduct—deluding Karmas defiling the soul. A saint is expected to approach his Guru, frankly confess to him all sins and transgressions committed by him, and atone willingly for his past sins by suffering such punishment as may be proposed by him (the Guru).

Kāyotsarga signifies a formal non-attachment to the body for the prescribed period of time. The bodily organs are required to be without any moven at the time of Kāyotsarga. He, who is possessed of pure thoughts, has conquered his sleep, is well-versed in the religious scriptures and has acquired the physical strength and spiritual energy, can practise Kāyotsarga which will conduce to his well-being on the spiritual journey.

5) Sāmāyika which is one of the disciplinary vows is an essential daily practice. It requires a saint to devote fixed hours of the day, that is, morning, noon and evening for contemplation of the self for spiritual advancement. It means an incessant continuance of the placid and unruffled frame of mind in the midst of life and death, loss and gain, pleasant and unpleasant events, friends and foes, pleasures and pain. In the life of a householder Sāmāyika has a place in his daily life but in the case of an ascetic, it is of great value as supplementing his other austerities. It keeps him away from evil thoughts of every kind and enhances his peace of mind which is the backbone of sound meditation.

6) Paramabhakti is the combination of Stuti and Vandana. It requires an ascetic to practise devotion to the spiritual characteristics of the Jinas by offering salutation with simultaneous
prayers of the attributes so that his understanding of qualities of the soul might become clearer and his own life more spiritualistic. He gains more spiritual knowledge and becomes well-disciplined in his practices.

The other Mūlaguṇas relate to certain external observances. Nakedness is one of the conditions of a Digambara saint. Sogani has referred to some scriptural sources to say that nudity is prescribed in Śvetāmbara texts as well, but the commentators say that it is learnt from Jinakalpi monks. Despite the constant references regarding nudity in Śvetāmbara texts the rules of clothing are found in them but they are not required to be particular about them. A saint should neither take his bath nor cleanse his teeth. He must sleep on the ground or a wooden plank. He has to take his food only once in a day standing and that too in the palm of his hands. He has to remove his hair with his own hands. A Śvetāmbara monk uses a pot for taking his food and a wooden plank to sleep upon. According to sects and regions there are minor differences in receiving and taking food etc.

Besides observing these basic qualities, he has to bear patiently all the afflictions that face a wandering monk so that he does not swerve from the path of stoppage of Karmas and is able to annihilate them. These afflictions or hardships (parisahās are twenty-two: 1) Hunger (ksudha), 2) thirst (pipāsa), 3) cold (śīta), 4) heat (uṣṇa), 5) insect-bite (daṁśamaśaka), 6) nakedness (nāgnya), 7) absence of pleasures (arati), 8) woman (strī), 9) tired-feeling from roaming (caryā), 10) discomfort of continuous sitting (nisadyā), 11) discomfort in sleeping (śawayā), 12) censure and scolding (ākrośa), 13) injury (vadha), 14) begging (yācanā), 15) failure to get food (alābha), 16) Disease (roga), 17) pricking of blades of grass (trṇasparśa), 18) dirt (mala), 19) reception and honouring (satkāra-puraskāra), 20) consciousness of intelligence (jñāna), 21) consciousness of ignorance (ajñāna) and 22) lack of faith (adarśana).

There is no need of any explanation about the first five hardships as their implications are clear. Nakedness is dispensed
with by people who are ignorant of the importance and practice of that vow. An ascetic has to face ridicule and abuses of other people. He is indifferent to pleasures and pain; this is possible only when he conquers his sense of dissatisfaction arising out of self-denial of all kinds of sensual pleasures. He has to conquer all sense of excitement or passionate thoughts that are likely to arise at the sight of lovely or attractive women. He has to move barefooted from place to place involving pain and discomfort. He has to endure all these effects of continuous wandering. He has to sit during the day almost in the same posture and certain discomfort is quite natural. Similarly he has to sleep on hard ground without movement, sometimes suffering insect-bites. These are to be borne as natural to the life of an ascetic. During his wanderings, he has to face hatred, jeers and anger from people who do not like a naked monk moving freely along the roads in cities and villages. He has to bear all these without show of anger or dislike and overcome censure or hatred with self-restraint. Sometimes, a monk is beaten or pelted with stones; he has to suffer the injuries with patience thinking them to be due to his own past Karmas without blaming mischief-mongers. He has to beg for his food only according to rules; but if he does not get food, he cannot resort to pitiful begging or plead for mercy. He has merely to endure the consequences. It is natural that as a human being he is subject to diseases and ailments. He has to endure the pain caused by thorns and pebbles while wandering. Since he should have no attachment or love for his body, he must patiently bear all these afflictions. He does not take bath at any time and has merely to shake off the dust if any with his bunch of peacock feathers. His main aim is to purify his soul and keep his mind free from every kind of defilement.

He is indifferent to praise or cold reception. He does not become elated by the grandeur of welcome nor disappointed by the indifference of people. He is not proud of his learning nor disheartened by his ignorance. His life is one of quiet pilgrimage for liberation. He studies the scriptures, delivers discourses, indulges in self-analysis and repents for his lapses, if any. He
lives a life of supreme detachment and is always intent on the spiritual progress of his soul. He wards off all obstacles silently and marches on with his magnanimous indifference to worldly happenings, with the sole object of stopping the influx of fresh Karmas and trying to annihilate the old ones. He does not allow his faith in the perfect nature of his soul to be affected by passing considerations and goes on endeavouring all hardships with patience and smile to reach higher stages of self-realisation. With his self-restraint and self-knowledge, he does not allow the purity of his soul and equanimity of his mind to be disturbed in any manner. The afflictions are beyond his control and have therefore to be endured as inherent in the process of self-purification.

The qualities that ought to be possessed by an ascetic have been referred to by Āsādhara in his comprehensive treatise on the subject of Anagāra-dharma or the "Religion of the Houseless". He has referred to the fact that in the Kali Yuga (the present cycle of time) there are many ascetics who preach many wrong principles of religion which do not conduce to the well being of their audience. There is nothing in their expositions that shows the way to salvation; they are showy and have little regard for the spiritual progress of their followers.

He has explained the term 'nirgranthā'. Thoughts of mundane life which enhance wrong perception (mithyātva) constitute 'granthi'; he who has completely eliminated such thoughts from his mind is called a Nirgrantha. He follows five kinds of conduct: darśanācāra, jñānācāra, cāitrācāra, tapācāra and vīryācāra; he also pursues his disciples to follow them. He masters the scriptures by constant and gradual studies and is endowed with following ten special qualities. He is constantly engaged in doing good to others and in expounding the doctrines both from the points of reality and popular view.

The following ten qualities have been referred to by Āsādhara.15

1) He has to observe the three guptis and the five samitis; the three guptis have already been discussed as having reference to
control of mind, speech and body as also the five kinds of careful behavior (samitis) in the use of trodden path, gentle speech, receipt of alms avoiding forty-two faults, in receiving and keeping things on the ground and in the performance of operations of nature.

2) Studying and memorising the four kinds of scriptures (āmnāya) consisting of i) Prathamānuyoga, ii) Karanānuyoga, iii) Caranānuyoga and iv) Dravyānuyoga. The first one refers to such scriptures like the ‘Mahāpurāṇa’, ‘Harivamśapurāṇa’, ‘Padmapurāṇa’ etc which deal with the lives of sixty-three great men and illustrating the principles of human life and liberation. Karanānuyoga refers to such scriptures that contain detailed discussion about the universe, the loka (this world) and the aloka, the world beyond. ‘Trilokasāra’ and ‘Tiloyapanānti’ etc are books that treat this subject with implications on transmigration and the uncertainties of time and births in the four kinds of gatis. Caranānuyoga deals with the content, development and perfection of conduct: these matters have been dealt with in works like ‘Mālācāra’, ‘Ratnakaranda-śrāvakācāra’ ‘Purusārtha-siddhyupāya’ etc. The last one Dravyānuyoga deals with the six substances, the knowledge of which is most essential for a clear understanding of the principles of life and of the nine Padārthas which cover the entire field of metaphysical theories of Jainism. Kundakunda Ācārya has dealt with these matters in the ‘Samayasāra’, ‘Pravacanasāra’, ‘Pancāstikāya’ etc. Umāsvāmi has discussed all matters connected with the last three Anuyogas. A study of these four Anuyogas forms the foundation for clear perception of all the principles of Jainism and acquisition of thorough knowledge of the same.

3) The third virtue is dhītratā or the sense of patient forbearance so that he can courageously put up with all the bodily afflictions like thirst, hunger etc. This virtue is necessary to keep him calm in the pursuit of his other vows and meditation in an undisturbed manner.

4) The fourth virtue relates to knowledge of the worldly life and social conditions so that he can preach his religion so as to
suit different kinds of people residing in different regions and climates.

5) He must have sound knowledge of his own religion as also of other faiths; this would enable him to propound his views, with intelligence and clarity even before men learned in different faiths.

6) He must be endowed with the power of eloquence so as to enable him to express himself clearly and with precision. There are chances of his being confronted with arguments by other people and it is necessary to clear their doubts with patience and sound reasons.

7) The seventh quality is possession of a good personality endowed with composure expressing a sense of reverence and calm. He should possess the three qualities like great learning, capacity for arduous penance and ability to head a group of disciples.

8) He must have expert knowledge of all religious lore with ability for convincing exposition. He must be tolerant and must bear out the principles of Anekāntavāda in his conduct; he must have compassion, forbearance and abandonment without attachment towards any worldly object. His external conduct should be exemplary and his activities always directed towards spiritualism and self-realization. He should be the messenger of his religion both by his speech and conduct.

9) His object must always be to protect all beings from harm so that whatever he says or does will evoke silent obedience by his disciples and others.

10) He must evoke confidence in others so that everyone could feel happy in his company and be inclined to approach him happily when advice is needed. He must speak with restraint and be sweet in his talks. He must have full patience to understand other's questions and answer them with understanding and sympathy.
Asadhara has discussed other subjects which have been referred to above. It is however certain that the foundations of an ascetic’s life and character are self-restraint and purity of mind and conduct. In order to achieve these objects, he has to practise both external (bāhya) and internal (āntara) austerities. All writers who have dealt with the Yati-Dharma have discussed that matter. The austerities are self-imposed and follow as a matter of corollary after initiation into the vow of a Muni or Yati. The austerities have to be practised voluntarily for the mortification of the body to prepare the mind for complete withdrawal from the shackles of mundane life. There are six external austerities as mentioned by Umāsvāmi. They are: fasting (anaśana), taking food in reduced quantity (avamaudarya), predetermination as to the manner and number of houses in relation to begging (vṛttipari-
sāṅkhyaṇa), giving up of juicy and delicious foods like milk, curds, oils etc., (rasaparītya), choice of lonely habitation (vivikta-
śayyāśana), and mortification of the body (kāya-kleśa). The object of these austerities is to gain greater self-restraint and destruction of attachment. Fasting is a well recognised mode of subduing the senses. The second one refers not only to limiting of houses but also to acceptance of food only when certain predeter-
tained conditions are found. It has already been mentioned that he should not take food specially prepared for him. Diminished diet is intended to keep him alert for his studies and discourses. The fourth austerity of giving up of delicious and juicy diet assists him in curbing his passions and excitement of of senses. Lonely habitation helps him in living a life of celibacy, meditation and devoted quiet study. The last one relating to bodily mortification prepares him for a life of suffering and self-denial.

The internal austerities comprise expiation (prayāscitta), respect for holy persons (vinaya), rendering service to ascetics in difficulty or suffering from some ailment (vaṁśavṛtya) study of the scriptures (svādhyāya) renunciation of all possessions including the sense of of ego (vyuṣtsarga) and meditation (dhyāna).
These internal austerities are intended to purify the mind with a view to attain greater concentration and meditation on the nature of the self. There cannot be real meditation unless the mind is rid of all sloth, indifference and carelessness. The first relates to an open and frank confession before a Guru of all lapses, transgressions, breaches of vows and rules of conduct; after confession, there should be real repentance accompanied by a determination not to allow such lapse or breach to be committed again through negligence or otherwise. Repentance is sure to arouse one's consciousness, vigilance and alertness in future speech or conduct. It virtually amounts to an act of self-condemnation. If the Guru suggests any precautions to be taken in any particular matter, that must be accepted with reverence and observed in practice. The second austerity requires development of humility and respect towards the Jaina, the Guru and the scriptures. The mundane and outward consequences of vinaya are wide recognition, friendship, respect, grace of Guru, obedience of the command of Jina and destruction of ill-will, while the inward and supermundane fruits of vinaya are ease in self-restraint, penances, acquisition of knowledge, purification of the self, emergence of the feeling of gratitude, simplicity, commendation of other man's qualities, the destruction of conceit and lastly the attainment of emancipation. The third austerity of rendering service to other ascetics has already been explained.

Svādyāya is self-study and study of the scriptures not only to enhance one's own knowledge of the scriptures but also to achieve firmer faith in the validity of the Jaina doctrines. Renunciation is both external and internal, of all material objects and of internal passions including the feeling of egoism.

Dhyāna or meditation is of vital importance for attainment of emancipation. It is of four kinds: 1) ārta-dhyāna refers to contemplation of past associations which cause distress, pain and suffering. It occurs in the perverted and vacillating minds who are partially disciplined in the vows and austerities; 2) raudra-dhyāna occurs in the case of those ascetics whose mind is not still free from passions, anger, himsā, falsehood, propagation of false
doctrines, censure of others and pleasures of senses. These two are inauspicious (aprasyasta) kinds of meditations; 3) dharma-dhyāna implies reflection and meditation on the means of annihilating the karmas and getting release from worldly miseries and sufferings. To meditate upon the self by subduing all other thoughts is Dharma-Dhyāna: 4) śukla-dhyāna is the best kind of meditation. All inauspicious thoughts and desires are eliminated and there is annihilation of the passions that defile the soul. It is by practice of this pure kind of meditation that the soul becomes liberated. There are four kinds of Śukla-Dhyāna. In the last kind, the Omniscient, after establishing himself in gross bodily activity, makes the activities of the mind and speech subtle. Then after renouncing the bodily activity, he fixes himself in the activities of the mind and speech and makes the gross bodily activity subtle. Afterwards, the mental and vocal activities are stopped and subtle activity of the body is left. In the last type of Śukla-Dhyāna, even the subtle activity of the body is stopped. The soul now becomes devoid of mental, vocal and physical vibrations, and immediately after the time taken to pronounce five syllables it attains disembodied liberation.\textsuperscript{19}

The last vow which an ascetic has to observe is that of Sallekhana. It is common both to the house-holder and to the ascetics and hence is dealt with in a separate chapter.

It would be evident that the rules of conduct and the austerities which an ascetic has to observe are of an extremely difficult character and that only a person who is mentally prepared for a life of renunciation can be initiated into the stage. The fact that Jainism does not accept the principles of Varnāśrama-Dharma of the Hindu religion might imply that a person might become an ascetic at any age; but the principles underlying the eleven Pratimās and the fourteen Gunāsthānas establish that only a person who is imbued with full faith in the validity of Jaina philosophy and is possessed of right knowledge of Ātman and matter, of Ahimsā and Aparigraha in all their aspects, and is prepared for a life of penance and of austerities can be a successful
ascetic. It is a life of renunciation with readiness to suffer all afflictions due to nudity, barefooted walking and sleeping on bare ground with a restricted diet only once a day, if possible, spending all the time in study, preaching and meditation is what an ascetic stands for. It is in the fulfilment of the ethics and spiritual requirements of that life that his salvation lies.
Bibliography and References


CHAPTER XVII

SALLEKHANA

Bhagavān Mahāvīra has said that there are two ways of ending life with death: death with one’s will, and death against one’s will. An ignorant man attached to pleasures and amusements, transgresses the law of Dharma and embraces unrighteousness trembles in fear when death is at hand and dies in misery having lost his chance of making the best of life. The virtuous who control themselves and subdue their senses face death full of peace and without injury to any one; such a death falls to the lot of every monk and some superior house-holder.¹

Sallekhana is facing death (by an ascetic or house-holder) voluntarily when he is nearing his end and when normal life according to religion is not possible due to oldage, incurable disease, severe famine;² he should subjugate all his passions and abandon all worldly attachments, observe all austerities, gradually abstain from food and water and lie down quietly meditating on the real nature of the self until the soul parts from the body. The basic concept of this vow is that man who is the architect of his own fortune should face death in such a way as to prevent the influx of new Karmas and liberate the soul from the bondage of Karmas that may be still clinging to it.

Every soul is pure and perfect by nature; it is characterised by infinite perception or faith, infinite knowledge, infinite bliss and infinite power. It is associated with Karma from eternity
and therefore becomes subject to numerous forms of existence subject to births and deaths. The supreme object of religion is to show the way for liberation of the soul from the bondage of Karmas. Those who adopt the vow immediately become self-reliant, self-composed and self-concentrated; they cease to be agitated by personal considerations and suffering, and rise above the cravings and longings of the flesh. The soul is lifted out of the slough of despondency and negativity. To be able to control one's conduct at the moment of death is the fruit (culmination) of asceticism.3

A comprehensive exposition of this vow is to be found in the "Ratna-Karanda Śrāvakācāra" by Ācārya Samantabhadra who probably lived in the second century A. D. The vow is also called sanyāsa-marāṇa. He who adopts the vow should, with a pure mind, give up friendship, enmity, company and possessiveness. He should forgive his own relations, companions and servants, and should, with sweet words, ask for pardon of everybody. He should discuss frankly with his Guru (preceptor) all the sins committed by himself, or sins which he abetted others to commit, or consented to their commission by others, and abide by the great vow till death. During the period, he should wholly efface from his mind all grief, fear, regret, affection, hatred, prejudice etc., and with strength of mind and enthusiasm, he should keep his mind supremely happy with the nectar of scriptural knowledge. He should gradually give up food and take only liquids like milk, butter-milk etc., later, he should give up milk also and take only warm water. Thereafter, he should give up even warm water gradually according to his capacity, continue his fast and quit the body while the mind is wholly occupied with the meditation of the namokāra-mantra.

During the period of observance of this vow, he must avoid the five kinds of transgressions: 1) He should not entertain a feeling that it would have been better if death had come a little later. 2) He should not also wish for a speedy death. 3) He should entertain no apprehensions as to how he would bear the
pangs of death. 4) He should not remember his relatives and friends at the time of death. 5) He should not wish for a particular kind of fruit as a result of his penance.⁴

According to Umāsvāmi, the vow of sallekhāna should be adopted most willingly or voluntarily when death is very near.⁶ A person adopting the vow can obtain his peace of mind by making a frank confession of his sins, either committed or abetted; when it is not possible to approach an Ācārya or Guru, one should sit calmly, meditate upon the pañca-parameśthiṣṭa and recall to one’s mind all types of sins and transgressions either committed by oneself or abetted by oneself. He should shut out all his evil thoughts. If he is suffering from deadly or serious disease, he should endure all the pangs with equanimity and tranquility without exhibiting any signs of suffering, with an inborn conviction that the disease itself is the result of his own Karmas. He should eliminate all his passions and mental weaknesses. The mind should be filled with the ambrosial knowledge of scriptures that gives him joy and strength.⁶

The body has to be protected so long as it is useful for attainment of Right Faith, Right Knowledge and Right Conduct. The body is mortal; if it dies, you can have another body; but if you sacrifice your religion for the sake of your body, you cannot regain the sanctity of your religion which helps you in your spiritual realisation. When life is coming to an end by a natural cause or by some calamity like a disease, or attack from an enemy, it is proper to adopt the vow of death by fasting and meditation in fulfilment of the religious vows and practices.⁷

It is common knowledge that amongst the Jainaś, the monks, nuns, house-holders and the house-ladies are accustomed to fasting during the course of their normal life. Hermann Jacobi says: “Among the austerities, fasting is the most conspicuous; the Jainaś have developed it to a kind of art and reached a remarkable proficiency in it”⁸. During the period of fast, one ought to acquire complete detachment and peace of mind not only
by freeing the mind from passions of every kind like anger, greed, love and pride etc but also by repentance for the sins or lapses committed after making a frank and full confession of the same before his or her Guru. One should acquire mental and spiritual poise before adopting the vow.

The "Ācārāṅga Sūtra" has explained the three kinds of Sallekhanā: bhāktraprātyākhyāna maraṇa, īṅgita maraṇa and pādāpopagamana. The first one is prescribed for a well-controlled and instructed monk. He should desist from doing, causing, or allowing to be done any movement of the body, speech or mind. The second one which is still more difficult requires the monk not to stir from one's place and check all motions of the body. The third one is still more difficult. The monk should examine the ground most carefully and lie down wholly unmindful of his body, putting up with all kinds of mortifications of the flesh. He should seek enlightenment in the contemplation of the eternal characteristics of the soul without any delusions of life. A monk or a pious layman should reach the end of his life without any attraction to external objects after having patiently chosen any one of the three methods for attainment of Nirvāṇa.

Ācārya Kundakunda has referred to this vow and stated that death is of three kinds: bāla maraṇa, bālapandita-marāṇa, and pandita-marāṇa. Bāla-maraṇa is the death of an individual who has right faith but does not possess full self-control. The second is a kind of death which is faced by a house-holder who has reached the fifth stage of his spiritual progress, and who is unable to abstain from the hīṃsā of one-sensed beings and is still indecisive in the matter of self-restraint. Pandita-marāṇa is the death of an ascetic who has attained pure knowledge about his own self. The death of Tīrthankaras or Gāṇadhāras is of this kind.

Since the main object of all vows and austerities is the liberation of the soul from the bondage of Karmas, the objectives of the vow of Sallekhanā are: the Karmas obscure the inherent qualities of the soul; the mind and body should be led towards
purity, and help the soul to live a life of compassion. While fasting purifies the body, meditation and introspection assist the soul in its purification, elevation and realization. When the body is to perish due to any of the causes mentioned above, a course of planned death is preferable to a life of irreligion. Before accepting the vow, the monk or the house-holder must conquer all his passions. He should achieve complete detachment from all ties of affections and be free from prejudice and ill-will. Supreme forgiveness towards all must govern his attitude of mind after having begged for forgiveness from everyone else for himself. The mind should be full of joy and equanimity. The acceptance of the vow is thoroughly voluntary with no faltering or lapse of any kind in mind or conduct. Death by Sallekhana according to scriptural rules is the victory of the soul over Karmas and other infirmities of the mind and body. It is an act of fulfilment and a fitting culmination to a life of piety and religion.

In spite of its religious character and austerity, some western and eastern scholars have characterised Sallekhana as suicide or a form of suicide. Such a view overlooks the sociological and psychological distinctions that exist between the characteristics of Sallekhana and suicide. The psychology of a person committing suicide is marked by one or more of the following characteristics:

1) Ambivalence or a desire to die which simultaneously creates a conflict in the mind. 2) A feeling of hopelessness or helplessness, with inability to handle the problem on hand. 3) A physical or psychological feeling of exhaustion, frustration or both. 4) The mind is full of anxiety, tension, depression, anger, or guilt or some of them. 5) There are feelings of chaos and exhaustion in the mind with inability to restore order or calm. 6) The mind is unable to see any solution to the situation causing the agitation. 7) There may be loss of interest or fear of life, with excitement, frustration or extreme depression. 8) In suicide, death is brought about secretly and suddenly by means of offence: hanging, cutting, poisoning, shooting etc.

A monk or a house-holder adopting the vow of Sallekhana has none of these infirmities of the mind or emotional excitement,
depression, or frustration. Suicide is committed to escape from certain situations from which the victim is unable to save himself. The idea is to put an end to life immediately by some violent or objectionable means. The suicide results in harm to the family or kith and kin of the person who commits suicide. While suicide is committed in secrecy and by adoption of questionable devices, Sallekhanā is adopted when the mind is free from all passions with the full consent of the Guru and with an open mind of forgiveness and compassion towards all; death evokes devotion and religious feelings while in the case of suicide, death is attended with horror or scorn.

There is thus a difference between suicide and Sallekhanā as regards intention, situation, means adopted and the consequences of death. Jaina thinkers have addressed themselves to this question and have given cogent reasons for saying that Sallekhanā is not suicide. Amṛtacandra Sūri has defined suicide with such precision that his definition can stand the scrutiny of any modern jurist: “He, who actuated by passions, puts an end to his life by stopping breath or by water, fire, poison or weapons is certainly guilty of suicide.” In Sallekhanā, all desires and passions are subjugated and the body is allowed to wither away gradually by voluntary fasting with no bodily pangs or pains when the mind is blissfully peaceful. C. R. Jaini has summed up the position of Sallekhanā vis-a-vis suicide thus: “There is no question here of a recommendation to commit suicide or of putting an end to one’s life, at one’s sweet-will and pleasure, when it appears burdensome, or not to hold any charm worth living for. The true idea of Sallekhanā is only this, that when death does appear at last, one should know how to die, that is, one should die like a man and not like a beast, bellowing and panting and making vain efforts to avoid the unavoidable... By dying in the proper way, will is developed, and it is a great asset for the future life of the soul which is a simple substance, and will survive the bodily dissolution and death... The Jaina Sallekhanā leaves ample time for further consideration of the situation, as the process which is primarily intended to elevate the will is extended over a period of days and is not brought to an end at once.”
In sum, suicide is an act of mental aberration due to some cause which the victim cannot control, while Sallekhana is a well-planned death in pursuance of noble laws of religion inspired by the highest ideal of self-realisation or peaceful death to ward off further entanglement in the bondages of Karmas. Hundreds of instances of Sallekhana have been recorded in the inscriptions found in the different parts of the State of Karnataka and collected in the twelve volumes of Ephigraphia Carnatica published by the State Government. The latest instance is that of the greatest modern saint by name Sri Santisagar Maharaja who observed the vow in September 1955 on the Hills of Kumbhalagiri in the Maharashtra State (India).
Bibliography and References


4. Ibid, Verse 129


CHAPTER xviii

PATHWAY TO LIBERATION

"Being eternally free from contact with the Karmas and the consequent veils, the Supreme Soul resides at the highest stage, as if the sky, with full effulgence. With the highest sense of fulfilment in every respect, the soul which has attained perfection rests in supreme Bliss being the embodiment of Omniscience."¹

According to Jainism, the path of salvation or deliverance lies through the acceptance and practice of the three Jewels (ratnatraya) as a unit which helps the individual to destroy the Karmas as has been discussed in Chapter XII. The nature of the Karmas and the process of their destruction leading the soul to a gradual stage of spiritual evolution have been dealt with already.

In this world, there are four things of supreme value which it is difficult for a living being to obtain; and they are human birth, instruction in true religion, faith and full power (purusārtha) in self-control.² Those beings which follow the road of right knowledge, faith, conduct and austerities will attain beatitude.³
The soul is an embodiment of infinite comprehension, knowledge, bliss and power. These are covered by the veils of the Karmas and hence they are invisible to the naked eye. So self-realization consists in the removal or destruction of the veils and realizing the inherent qualities of the soul. The ancient Indian philosophers have laid down that it is by the practice of Yoga or meditation that one can attain self-realization. The different principles of Jaina philosophy considered so far would undoubtedly disclose that it is the faithful and scrupulous practice of ethical rules and virtues that is essential for achievement of self-discipline in life. Moral discipline is preparatory to spiritual discipline. The five vows, the ten virtues, the five guptis, the five samitis, the twelve kinds of reflections, *ānupreksās* and endurance of various affictions are intended to regulate the mind and body and purge the soul from the bondages of Karmas. The worldly existence is full of miseries and privations which are of our own making. The ethical exercises provide sincere and effective scope not only for suffering them with equanimity of thought and conduct, but also for bringing about subsidence of the Karmas that beset us during our journey through life. The ethical and psychological codes ought not to be rejected with a light-heart as tedious and speculative restrictions on our enjoyment of life. They must be accepted with full faith as embodying the experiences of great souls who passed through life happily marching in peace and happiness towards the destination of deliverance which all souls aspire to achieve.

Omniscience is attained on the destruction of the deluding Karmas, of perception and knowledge obscuring Karmas and of the obstructive Karmas. The deluding Karmas are destroyed gradually in proportion to the extent of self-control attained by individual. When the self-control is full and perfect, there emerges the purity of thought-activity which reduces the fruition and duration of the inauspicious Karmas. Purity of thought is necessary for pacification and gradual elimination of passions like anger, greed, pride and infatuation. The previous discussion about the march of the soul through fourteen spiritual stages
(Chap XI) points to the ways of its gradual ascent to spiritual heights. So long as the deluding Karmas persist, spiritual progress is impossible. The secret of spiritual progress lies in the destruction of the four destructive Karmas; the task is arduous but if pursued with faith and purity, the self can attain Omniscience. It has been previously pointed out that on the attainment of Omniscience, the soul can attain to Arhathood; when the four non-destructive Karmas are also destroyed, the pure soul becomes the Siddha and dwells in eternal bliss at the summit of the universe.

The external austerities help an individual to conquer the senses, attain firmness in self-control and purge the Karmic matter from the soul. The internal austerities are: expiation of sins (prāyaścitta), politeness (vinaya), serving the guru (vaivāyṛtya), study of scriptures (svādhyāya), meditation (dhyāna), and abandoning attachment for the body (vyutsarga). These have been dealt with while discussing the ethics for the ascetics (Chap XVI). The object of these internal austerities is to train a spiritual aspirant for a life of contemplation and meditation. While the practice of external austerities leads to a life of detachment and purification of the soul, the internal austerities bring about total annihilation of the four destructive Karmas.

In the scheme of internal austerities, Dhyāna occupies the highest place of importance. Jainism, like other systems of Indian thought, attaches supreme importance to Dhyāna (concentration of mind) as a means of spiritual realisation. Along with its purification, the soul develops the capacity for self-concentration.

Dhyāna has been defined by Umasvāmi as concentration of thought on one particular object. It is turning away the thought from several objects and fixing it on one: it is upto one antar-muhūrtā or a period upto 48 minutes. In one sense it is negative in that it requires curbing of other thoughts. These are certain causes which retard concentration. Apprehensions of motive and public opinion retard one's own progress. Passions and desires, emotions and excitements to which the mind is long habituated to dwell upon, deprive the soul of its
serenity and the body, of its restfulness. Ill health, habits of luxury and inability to bear hardships are the other causes of distraction.\textsuperscript{6} Control of diet and other activities of the mind and body play a significant role in curbing all activities, both physical and mental, and pave the way for development of a strong will which is a pre-requisite for concentration.

Ease of posture (āsana) is also necessary for steadiness of Dhyāna, since no one can remain in an uncomfortable position for a long time. The general rule with regard to posture is that one should stand or sit in such a way as to produce the smallest amount of tension in his system, taking care at the same time not to sacrifice the spirit of austerity for the love of bodily ease.\textsuperscript{9} The popular āsanas are: Padmāsana, Vīrāsana and Sukhāsana.

As regards the place, the "Jñānārṇava" supplies a long list of places which are to be avoided, and which are to be preferred for the practice of Dhyāna. Places which are disturbing, captivating: unpleasant and noisy on account of crows, owls, asses, dogs and the like... or those which that might counteract meditational efforts should be rejected. Mountains caves and other solitary places should be chosen. The Yogi should fix his seat on a wooden plank, āśīḍa (stone), ground or sandy place.\textsuperscript{10}

Sound meditation requires, so far as the bodily preparations are concerned, that there should be restraint in food, comfortable position and moderate sleep.

Kundakunda Ācārya has pointed out that after acquiring supreme equanimity of mind as a result of the observance of austerities, one should practise supreme concentration after abjuring from the activities of uttering words and pondering over the nature of the Paramātmā. Most of the Jaina Ācāryas have recognised that there are three kinds of Self: bahirātmā or the outer Self, antarātmā or the inner Self and parātmā or Supreme Self. The bahirātmā consists of the sense organs; the inner Self is the consciousness that the soul is distinct from the body. The emancipated Self is the Supreme Self; it is completely purged of the
impurities of the various kinds of Karmas and is therefore the object of meditation.

Umāsvāmi mentions that there are four types of meditation: according to the mental state: ārta, raudra, dharmya and śukla. The first two are inauspicious.

Ārta-dhyāna is contemplation in which the concentration is disturbed by thoughts of painful, sorrowful or disagreeable objects. Disagreeable objects are such as poison, prickly thorns, enemies and weapons. They cause pain and the individual’s attention is disturbed by the thoughts of suffering and of the ways of getting rid of them. It is of four kinds: contemplation of the presence of an unpleasant object and the anxiety to get rid of it; contemplation of the loss of a pleasant object and the anxiety to regain it; constant thought of pain and disease and the desire to remove it; and the anxiety to enjoy unattained objects of pleasure. Every one has many experiences through his senses and they are pleasant or unpleasant; if they are unpleasant, the desire is to get rid of them; if they are pleasant, the desire is for their continued enjoyment. The concern to be free troubles the mind and disturbs the tranquility. The individual becomes distracted and continues to worry about the present as also the future. The individual may well suffer from the pains of various kinds like the headache, cold etc. He would be eager to get rid of them and anxious to find out remedies giving effective relief. One may have attachments to many things in life; there would be a strong desire to continue the association and anxiety not to be separated from them. It is average human nature to continue one’s association with pleasant objects and experiences and he would be loath to part from them. There is also desire to obtain blessings and gifts from kings and gods by prayers with advantages here and hereafter. The individual hankers after many positions and amenities which he hopes to obtain by the grace of Indra and the lords of the earth. These four kinds of thoughts which disturb the mind are the consequences of passions, hatred and ignorance which are sure to increase attachment to the world rather than awaken his sense of other-worldliness.
Raudra-dhyāna or cruel and violent contemplation is also of four kinds as the mind becomes occupied with violence, falsehood, stealing and protection of one's possessions. Cruel thoughts may occur in individuals who have adopted vows partially or may not have taken any vows at all. Entertaining such thoughts frequently will create excitement and effect the efficacy of right belief. Due to excessive anger or want of compassion, one may think of killing, striking, cutting, binding, burning or branding which are the various forms of violence or injury. There may be thoughts of cheating, slandering, using vulgar language and incitement to harmful actions and thus taking delight in false speech. Similarly the intention to steal or rob others may be the result of intense greed which will cause injury to others. Desire to enjoy wealth add acquire what is not one's own will certainly lead to a mental condition of lure and oppression. Such thoughts disturbing the meditation create aversion, attachment and infatuation of worldly life.15

It would thus be clear that the two kinds of contemplations which are disturbed by unhealthy thoughts will retard the progress of the soul and generate new Karmas of inauspicious type. That is why they are called aprañasta or inauspious. They bar the path of liberation and involve the individual into the cycle of births and deaths.

Dharmya-dhyāna or virtuous meditation consists in the contemplation of the objects of revelation, misfortune or calamity, fruition of Karmas and the structure of the universe. This kind of meditation is free from passions and other causes of defilement of the soul. This is possible only in the seventh stage of spiritual advancement. This kind of meditation consists in thinking over 'the nature of things, tenfold virtues like kṣama etc, the three jewels and protection of living beings. Attachment and aversion, sense pleasures and extraneous distractions etc are avoided and the mind is concentrated on the nature of the Ātman; and one goes on meditation with joy and peace.'16 R. Williams has translated dharmya as 'Moral'. It consists in a) discerning the
command of Jina (ājnā-vicaya); b) discerning the nature of what is calamitous (apāya-vicaya); c) discerning the consequences of Karma (vipāka-vicaya) and d) discerning the structure of the universe (saṁsthāna-vicaya)\(^{17}\). Svādhyāya or self-study is part of the meditation of this kind.

The concentration of thought on account of the meditation (vicaya) on these objects is called Dharmadhyāna. The characteristic sign of a soul capable of this type of concentration is its natural love for and faith in the path it has selected to tread upon and the system of thought which it has been initiated in. Exposition (vācanā), critical enquiry (pratiprėchanā) and reflection (anuprekaś) are the conditions that lead to such concentration of mind.\(^{18}\) It would be clear that this kind of meditation presupposes the acquisition of the three jewels and non-attachment. Subhacandra has stated that for this kind of meditation, the person must possess love (maitri) for all living creatures, respect towards the learned (pramoda), compassion towards those in difficulties (karuṇā) and indifference towards the perverted (mādhyastha-bhāva). With these virtues, one is sure to rise high in spiritual status driving away all delusions and misconceptions about worldly existence.

Owing to the complicated nature of reality and absence of proper instruction on its various aspects it is not possible for every individual to know the realities of the universe. Wrong faith and wrong knowledge are so popular that one easily gets lost in the meshes of ignorance and marches further away from truth. So in this Dhyāna one deliberates upon the problems of worldly existence and the reasons which entangle the living beings in the cycles of births and deaths. In thinking about the fortunes and misfortunes in life, one has to contemplate upon the play of the various kinds of Karmas and the possible causes of the same. The daśā-dharma or the ten virtues have to be observed in daily life so that concentration on the virtues becomes a matter of habitual thought and action.

According to Jinabhadra, this kind of meditation is a stepping stone to Šukla-dhyāna, as the meditator would be familiar in
practice with the twelve kinds of reflections (anupreksās), colorations (leśyās) and the fruits of the various kinds of Karmas. Constant awareness of the nature of the soul and its relationship with the body is of vital importance in keeping him on the true path. The contemplation should be deeply rooted in the clear understanding of the ratna–trayas and the same should be fortified by regular study of the scriptures. Such moral and spiritual discipline will help him not only to purge the Karmas already entangling the soul but also prevent influx of the new Karmas. Regular self-study (svādhyāya) will keep the mind pure and active. The mind will be free from distractions and distractions of evil activities. Freed from infatuation and indecision, the mind becomes calm, collected and firmly rooted in the efficacy of the path shown by the Tirthankaras. He becomes free from attachments to the world as he knows its real nature. He loses all interest in worldly enjoyment and becomes steadfast in meditation. He gains such calm and concentration that it matters little to him whether he remains in the midst of a crowd or a lonely forest. There is no restriction on place, time and posture. The essentials of this meditation are scriptural self-study, the twelve reflections, the practice of the ten virtues and desisting from harmful activities of the body, mind and speech. Whatever may be the natural weaknesses of the body and intellect, one should think to the best of one's understanding, study and follow the instruction from the saints about the teachings of the Tirthankaras and meditate on the nature of the soul free from the pollutions of attachment, aversion and passions.¹⁹

The fourth but the best kind of meditation is called the Śukla-dhyāna (or the white or pure meditation). It is the highest kind of meditation. This kind of meditation is possible only for the omniscients. It is of four kinds. The first two can be attained by those who have attained the full knowledge of the scriptures and thereby realised virtuous concentration.

These two kinds occur before the self has ascended the ladder of spiritual progress. These are worthy to be meditated upon by
the ascetic, who has practised several observances such as control and so on to purify the mind in order to free himself from transmigration. The ascetic meditates on the material (objective atom) or thought (subjective atom) and with his knowledge of the scripture shifts to objects or verbal symbols or to activities of the body or the speech organ. He shifts i.e. oscillates his thoughts severally from one to the other. And just as a person of poor strength and enthusiasm cuts a tree for a long time with an unsteady hand and a dull axe, so also the ascetic tries to suppress or destroy the deluding Karmas, and he embraces the first type of pure concentration, namely the separate, scriptural, shifting concentration.²⁰

An ascetic who intends to destroy the deluding Karmas, engages his mind in pure activity which not only obstructs the influx of new Karmas but also assists in the destruction of the knowledge-deluding Karmas. He is assisted by his scriptural knowledge and he is free from wavering. He is passionless and is stainless like the pure crystal. There is no recession in his concentration and he destroys the four Karmas by the unique scriptural concentration with all its purity.

The four types of “White” (śukla) meditation have been also described by Jinabhādra: 1) meditation characterised by conceptual thinking on, and investigation of, the aspect of difference of objects, 2) meditation characterised by conceptual thinking on the single mode of an entity, without the involvement of investigation, 3) meditation accompanied with subtle physical movement and infallible and irreversible, 4) and meditation where these subtle activities are stopped.²¹ The first two types collect and concentrate the mind on the minutest possible entity and prepare the ground for stopping the activities of mind, speech and body which is achieved by the third and fourth types. Those who are engaged in the first two types of meditation are well-versed in the fourteen ancient scriptures (Śrūta-jñāna).²² It appears that conceptual thinking based on scriptural knowledge forms the basis of the first two types of Śukla-dhyāna. In the first type, there is
concentration upon an aspect of a particular entity from a number of stand points and the concentration might move or shift from one entity to another. In the second type, the mind concentrates upon a single entity and there is no shift from one aspect to another. The first one therefore is known as prțhakatva-vitarka-savicāra while the second is known as ekatva-vitarka vicāra.43

The third type of Sukla-dhyāna is known as sūkṣma-kriyā-nivartin as accompanied with subtle physical movement and is resorted to a few minutes before the final emancipation. All activities of the speech and mind are completely stopped. The gross functions of the body are stopped, though the breathing process continues. The soul rests only on the subtle activities of the body; there is no reversion in this stage and the soul automatically progresses to the next.

In the last type of Sukla-dhyāna, the soul becomes motionless; all the activities of the body, mind and speech cease and the soul attains the final emancipation. Even the subtle activities cease before emancipation.

Thus the purpose of meditation is complete release from all Karmas. The observance of external and internal austerities, renunciation and meditation preceded by self-study of the scriptures form the basis for this process. Just as the mass of dense clouds are wafted away by the winds, the mass of Karmas are destroyed by the strong gale of meditation. Passions, envy, grief and dejection which are conditions of a normal mind do not touch the mind which is purged of its Karmas. Meditation is the basis of all spiritual development and hence it should be practised by all those who want to attain real happiness. Omniscience is attained on the destruction of the deluding Karmas, the knowledge-obscuring Karmas, perception-obscuring Karmas as also the obstructive Karmas. The self attaining Omniscience becomes an arhat and after the destruction of even the Aghāti Karmas, it becomes the Siddha. There may be a longer or shorter interval between the attainment of these two stages, varying from soul to
soul depending upon the total disappearance of the age—Karma. Liberation is attained when all Karmas are destroyed or annihilated. When the soul is released from all Karmas, it becomes the Paramātman or Siddha and darts up to the summit of the universe. It may be recalled that one of the inherent characteristics of pure soul is upward motion. As soon as it is free from ties or attachment, it regains its own nature of darting up. For example, the flame of a candle moves up of its own accord: it is in its nature to do so. It is only when the wild wind moves that the flame wavers to different sides. In the absence of any wind, it moves up. The soul which has attained the status of Paramātman goes up to the end of the universe and stays there as there is no medium of motion in the non-universe to aid motion. When once the pure soul or the Siddha has reached the top-most end of the universe, it stays there eternally, never to return again to the terrestrial world from the abode of eternal bliss.24

The real meditation is meditation on the soul itself. At that stage, the external possessions like land, houses, gold, wealth etc and the internal hindrances like delusion, aversion, sorrow, fear, hatred etc which disturb the equilibrium of the mind have disappeared totally from the mental horizon. All faculties become devoid of their external activities and the soul is able to concentrate on itself.25 The contemplation of the self is the supreme object of Dhyāna and the devotee should reflect within himself that he knows the truth and devotedly believes in the scriptures, and will renounce all external activity and merge the self in the higher Self. As explained in the ‘Jñānārāṇava’ 40. 19, the person engaged in meditation should unite the Self with the higher self, inspired solely by the nature thereof and impregnating the self with the qualities of the higher Self.26

* This idea of the realization of the higher Self through the self has been adumbrated by almost all the Jainā thinkers. Somadeva also refers to four types of Śukla-dhyāna and designates the fourth as nīskriyā yoga wherein vibration of any kind is totally absent. This is how Handiqui explains the author’s view: “Trans-
cending the body, the Yogi now loses all connection with the mind and his vital breaths come to an end while he attains the supreme goal and perfect knowledge. This is the stage in which the self becomes the higher Self, and this is the mokṣa or liberation characterized by the destruction of both ‘destructive’ and ‘undestructive’ Karmas, and free from all the limitations of birth, a condition in which the self attains its own qualities.²⁷

Kundakunda Acārya has stated that he who is possessed of right faith and knowledge and meditates upon his self with concentration becomes free from the Karmas and attains the higher Self.²⁸ Yogindudeva says that the Karmas of the ascetics who dive deep into the ocean of the highest meditation get washed away and the soul attains purity. The self which attains Omniscience and understands the Loka and Aloka will surely become an Arhat full of bliss.²⁹ Being in the Self, the self should contemplate the Self with full concentration after having subdued all activities of of the senses.³⁰

Somadeva has expressed the same views. According to him, one who practises meditation should also contemplate the path of three jewels, the rules of conduct, the Anupreksās, and the seven fundamental principles of Jainism, and the personality of Lord Jina. But the contemplation of the self is the supreme object of Dhyāna and the devotee should reflect within himself that he knows the truth and devotedly believes in the scriptures, and will renounce all external activity and merge the self in the higher Self.³¹

Dhyāna or meditation is common to almost all religions. The ancient Hindu philosophers developed a theory called Yoga which is the science of self-realizations. The Yoga prescribed by Patañjali regards moral and physical discipline to be indispensable preliminaries to the spiritual progress. The Jainas are in agreement with the fundamental principles and practice of this system... The ‘Jñānārṇava’ of Śubhacandra and the ‘Yogasāstra’ of Hemacandra are valuable contributions to the study of Yoga as a science of
Pathway To Liberation

spiritual progress. In Jaina literature Haribhadra defines Yoga as that which leads one to emancipation and terms the Dhyāna and Samādhi were more in vogue than Yoga.

Surrender to God and emergence of the Self in the Supreme Self or the Brahman is emancipation according to the Hindu philosophers. Since Jainism does not recognise any such God, there is no room for the idea of merger. But the process of self-realization seems to be identical in character, except that it is called God realization. R. D. Ranade has pointed out that metaphysics, morality and mysticism are inseparable in the highest spiritual development of man. According to mystics, however, intuition is a faculty of supersensuous experience which is aroused in us by proper spiritual initiation and practice. And physiologically, we might say that the faculty of intuition is concerned with what might be called central instead of peripheral initiation. It is not the outside sense-experience that counts: it is the experience that is generated inside us in our intuitional process, that is, in the process of following the path of God, that matters. So, INTUITION, supersensuous experience and central initiation are involved in the evolution of mystical experience. Ranade has referred to three factors as incentives to spiritual life: 1) Great is the birth and great is the human life and so the betterment of our life is to achieve the ideal. 2) We look back upon our past life and that supplies us with a sublime conception of immortal life serving us as a sort of aspiration towards the spiritual life. 3) Man’s knowledge of his senses which often deceive him and even destroy him provides an aspiration to rise above the senses and utilize them for a higher and proper purpose. According to him, Nirvāṇa is not extinction but blissfulness, involving the wiping out of all our passions, desires and impulses merging ourselves into the Absolute.

This is the Hindu conception of mysticism which “denotes an attitude of mind which involves a direct, immediate, first-hand, intuitive apprehension of God.” It is the direct experience of the mutual response between the human and the divine indicating the
identity of the human souls and the ultimate reality. In the mystical experience the individual is 'liberated and exalted with a sense of having found what it has always sought and flooded with joy.' So far as Jainism is concerned, some of the earliest author-saints like Kundakunda and Pujyapada have described transcendental experiences and mystic visions.

Jaina mysticism turns round two concepts: Atman and Paramatman... Paramatman stands for God, though never a creator, etc. The creative aspect of divinity, I think, is not the sine qua non of mysticism. Atman and Paramatman are essentially the same, but in Samsara, the Atman is under Karmic limitations; and therefore he is not as yet evolved into a Paramatman. It is for the mystic to realise this identity or unity by destroying the Karmic encrustation of the spirit. In Jainism the conception of Paramatman is somewhat nearer that of a personal absolute. The Atman himself becomes the Paramatman, and not that he is submerged in the universal as in the Vedanta. In Jainism spiritual experience does not stand for a divided self achieving an absolute unification, but the bound individual expresses and exhibits his potential divinity... The soul following the religious path, goes higher and higher on the rungs of the spiritual ladder called Gunasthanas and from stage to stage till the various Karmas are destroyed... Some of the Gunasthanas are merely meditational stages and the subject of meditation is the potential attributes of the pure Atman... The aspirant is warned not to be misled by certain Siddhis, i.e. miraculous attainments, but go on pursuing the ideal till the Atman is realised.

We have seen in Chapter VI that in Jaina theory of knowledge, there are three kinds of direct knowledge: the Avadhi Jñāna, the Manahparyaya Jñāna and the Kevala Jñāna. It is only by the attainment of Kevala Jñāna that the soul can know and see everything regardless of time and space. The Tirthankara is an ideal teacher who has attained the highest spiritual experience. He words are of highest authority. Jainism contains all the essentials of mysticism. To evaluate mystical visions rationally is not to value them at all. These visions carry a guarantee of truth undoubtedly
with him who has experienced them; and their universality proves that they are facts of experience. The glimpses of the vision as recorded by Yogindu, are of the nature of light or of white brilliance... It may be noted in conclusion that the excessive rigidity of the code of morality prescribed for a Jaina saint gives no scope for Jaina mysticism to stoop to low levels of degraded Tantricism... The routine of life prescribed for a Jaina monk does not allow him to profess and practise miracles and magical feats for the benefit of house-holders with whom he is asked to keep very little company.  

Jaina mysticism is undoubtedly different from that of the Vedānta. To take a practical view the Jaina Tirthankaras like Rṣabhadeva, Neminātha, Pārśvanātha, Mahāvīra etc have been some of the mystics of the world; and rightly indeed Professor Ranade designates Rṣabhadeva, the first Tirthankara of the Jains, as 'yet a mystic of different kind, whose utter carelessness of his body is the supreme mark of his God-realization' and gives details of his mystical life. It would be interesting to note that the details about Rṣabhadeva given in the Bhāgavata practically and fundamentally agree with those recorded by Jaina tradition.  

According to Jaina theory, the Ātman attaining omniscience shines like the effulgence of the sun and experiences unalloyed bliss for which there is no parallel elsewhere. The great light flashes forth the moment self-realization is attained by the Ātman who simultaneously becomes blissful with the limitless knowledge of the universe.

The Jaina thinkers have indicated the practical steps to be followed in the attainment of insight into the real nature of the self and the knowledge of the various substances in the universe. The journey begins with the development of spiritual attitude. An aspirant has to consider the need of renouncing all identification with the animate objects like wife, children etc and develop such profound wisdom as will change his attitude towards the world around him. The inner self has to be disciplined by vows and austerities, devotion to the three Jewels and to Jina as their
embodiment so that he can attain purity in mind and body so as to be able to destroy the Karmas. How the soul can rise higher and higher from the lowest state of spiritual experience to the highest state of spiritual evolution has been discussed in full detail while dealing with the doctrine of fourteen Gunaśthānas. (Chap XI)

Sogani has discussed in detail the mystical significance of Jaina ethics and pointed out how the human self emerging from the cage of passions rests in the abode of consciousness. The Bālaprōtan accepts everything as his own, the Antarātman negates all but the Paramātman... transcends these qualities of acceptance and negation. The self rises from the state of ignorance to one of spiritual evolution to achieve Siddhatva raising above all to a state of complete liberation.49 It is not possible to give, as Radhakrishnan says, a positive description of the liberated soul. It is a state of freedom from action and desire, a state of utter and absolute quiescence. Zimmer shows that, in that state, the individuality, the masks, the formal personal features, are distilled away like the drops of rain that descend from the clear sky, tasteless and emasculaté.49

Ācārya Kundakunda has indicated with sufficient clarity the nature of the fully liberated soul. Such soul resides in the Siddhatva at the topmost of the universe free from birth and death. It is pure, supreme and devoid of the eight Karmas. It is all-knowing, all-seeing, all-blissful and all-powerful; it is indivisible, indestructible and inexhaustible. In this state of Nirvāna are found, perfect knowledge, perfect bliss, perfect power, perfect perception, immateriality, astirva, spatiality and formlessness. There is no medium of motion. There is neither pain nor pleasure, nor annoyance nor obstruction. There is neither delusion nor astonishment.41

This is the goal of all human endeavour. All religions prescribe liberation as the final objective to be achieved and attained not only by understanding the self but also by getting rid of all passions and other intemities of the mind and body that hinder spiritual progress.
According to Jainism, the march of the soul towards a spiritual life starts with the attainment of Samyaktva. With the right insight, the individual exerts to acquire the knowledge of the world he lives in, the nature of the principle substances Jiva and Ajiva, the causes of bondage of various kinds of Karmas, and the vows and practices by which he can get release from the Karmas. The moral and spiritual principles which are aimed at internal purity and release from attachments pave the way for evolution leading to purification of the soul. Dhyāna or meditation is of supreme importance for achieving concentration of the mind and liberation of the soul.

The difficulties of attaining pure and unsullied concentration have been emphasised with cogent reasons. The wavering mind is often disturbed by popular thoughts of likes and dislikes, of hatred and anger, of selfishness and greed. All such impurities of thought which disturb concentration have to be overcome by the practice of virtues and vows, austerities and suffering and, introspection and repentance. If progress is kept up, the virtuous (dharma) meditation and the white (sukla) meditation enable the aspirant to achieve the muchcoveted victory over entanglements of the soul until he destroys them fully in the manner discussed above.
Bibliography and References


3. Ibid Canto 28, Sūtra 3.
4. Ibid Canto X Verse 1.
5. Ibid Canto 30 Sūtra 30.


9. Ibid P 70.
16. Upadhye A. N: Commentary on Karṭtikeyanupreksa
BIBLIOGRAPHY

22. Ibid P 92.
27. Ibid P 277.
33. Ibid PP 12–3.
34. Ibid P 18.
36. Ibid P 40.
37. Ibid PP 40–1.
38. Ibid P 39.
39. Sogani K. C.: Ethical Doctrines in Jainism, Ch. VI.
Chapter xix

ANEKANTAVADA-SYADVADA

The distinguishing characteristics of a substance are its origin, destruction and permanence. These three characteristics are different from one another and cannot be understood apart from the substance itself. By permanence is meant that the essential nature of the substance is indestructible, though it may undergo certain modifications with reference to its form, space and time. It follows therefore that indestructibility or permanence is from one point of view and not from all points of view; for, if it were the latter, there cannot be any change at all.

Substances are characterized by an infinite number of attributes. For the sake of use or need, prominence is given to certain characteristics of a substance from one view. And prominence is not given to other characteristics as these are of no use or need at that time. Thus even the existing attributes are not expressed, as they are of secondary importance (anarpita). There is no contradiction in what is established by these two points of view. For instance, there is no contradiction in the same person Devadatta being a father, a son, a brother, a nephew, and so on. For, the points of view are different. From the point of his son, he is a father, and from the point of his father, he is a son. Similarly, with regard to the other designations. In the same manner, substance is permanent from the point of view of general properties. From the point of its specific modes, it is not permanent. Hence there is no contradiction.

It is therefore clear that every substance which exists can be looked at from different points of view; in other words, it is
governed by the doctrine of manifold points of view or relative pluralism. Every atom is indivisible; when there is a union of atoms, there is the formation of a molecule. Combination of atoms takes place on account of the greasy (sticky) and dry (rough) properties associated with them. While greasiness and dryness are the qualities of matter, they are also the causes of combination of matter. Greasiness is present in varying degrees in water, milk, ghee, oil etc., while dryness is present in dust, sand etc.

Every substance is therefore characterised by qualities and modes. Every substance has a distinctive quality which distinguishes it from all others. From the general point of view, knowledge is invariably associated with soul while form etc. are associated with matter.

According to Jainism, as we have already seen, the Universe comprises six substances, each of which is real and possesses qualities of its own. Each substance has general as well as special characteristics. A thing or an object may change its qualities. For example, a human being grows up from childhood into a youth, thereafter from youth to manhood and from manhood to oldage. Throughout these changes, he maintains his essential characteristic of a human being. It is the acceptance of this change with different phases that forms the basis of the Jaina doctrine of Anekāntavāda or manifold points of view or relative pluralism.

Jainism has a systematic classification of knowledge. It divides the philosophical standpoint into two main heads, the Nīcchāya and Vyavahāra. Of these, the former deals with the essential nature of things which remain unchanged while the latter takes into account only the popular point of utility and conditions or forms. The statement ‘This is a jar of clay’ is an illustration of the Nīcchāya Naya, while ‘this is a jar of butter’ is true only from the Vyavahāra or the practical point of view. Valid knowledge, like a lamp, illumines itself as also the object lying outside it. A mental and physical analysis of the Universe reveals that it is pluralistic in character.
The Jaina view is that there are infinite number of souls in the Universe. Matter or Pudgala possesses indefiniteness both in quality and quantity. Anu or atom which modern science has discovered was known to the Jaina thinkers; the atoms give rise to an infinite variety of material objects. The atoms are both diverse and infinite. Ākāśa has also innumerable space-points or Pradesas. Kāla or time has also an infinity of intrinsically real units called Kālanus or time-atoms which from the basis of the conventionally temporal distinctions like the minute, the hour, the day, the year and so on. There are innumerable points of space in the medium of motion (Dharma) and the medium of stationariness (Adharma) as in each individual soul. The media of motion and rest assist in facilitating motion and rest. The two pervade the entire universe in the manner of oil in the sesamum seeds. The two interpenetrate without any obstruction as they are non-material like the space. In terms of modern science, they possess the characteristics of ether which is assumed to fill all space and transmit all electro-magnetic waves. It therefore follows that according to Jaina philosophy all substances constitute reality and possess manyness or pluralism.

It would be seen that a single substance is endowed with infinite modifications, and there are infinite classes of substance; to know one substance fully is to know the whole range of the object of knowledge; and this is possible only in omniscience. A substance is endowed with qualities (or attributes) and modifications; though the substance is the same, it comes to be different because of its passing through different modifications; so when something is to be stated above a substance, viewed through a flux of modifications, there would be seven modes of predication.

Thus it is clear that our universe is complex and comprises infinite realities. To have simultaneous view of the totality of the infinite ad infinitum, with all its subjective and objective characteristics, with all its chequered aspects of dialectical opposites, such as 'I' and 'not I,' one and many, similar and dissimilar, eternal and ephemeral, determinate and indeterminate, prior and
subsequent. cause and effect, good and bad, ugly and beautiful, is high impossible for intellect. The view taken by intellect is never a whole view. It is always a partial view. It is merely a relative view—relative to the beliefs, prejudices, mood and purpose of the seer.⁹

It is common knowledge that different thinkers have taken differing views of the universe. The theories propounded are nihilism, dualism, monism, materialism, atheism and so on. Each of these expresses a point of the many and the points of view are obviously many. Each view is true from the particular stand-point of the seer and none of them is exhaustive.

To analyse and grasp the individual point of view (naya) is the function of Nayaśāda. According to Umāsvāmi knowledge is obtained by means of Pramāna and Naya.¹⁰ Pramāna is valid knowledge of itself and of things not proved before.¹¹ It is the instrumental cause of right knowledge which must be free from doubt, vagueness and perversity. Lack of discrimination between the real and unreal is the cause of wrong knowledge. Mental or physical disturbances create wrong attitude which again is the cause of wrong knowledge. Objects possess different characteristics which can be comprehended by omniscience only. Human perception and knowledge have their own limitations and hence we often take a partial view of thing. This is Naya; it deals with a particular aspect which the speaker has in view; it is therefore a theory of stand-points:

Nayaśāda:

A Naya, therefore, deals with only the particular aspect in view of the speaker but it does not deny the existence of the remaining attributes. When we speak of the colour of gold, we have no mention of its weight, touch, taste, smell and other attributes but our statement does not mean that gold is devoid of all other attributes besides colour.¹²

Pūjyapāda has defined Naya as the device which is capable of determining truly one of the several characteristics of an object
(without contradiction) from a particular point of view. It is of two kinds: Dravyārthika, that which refers to the general attributes of a substance and not to its modifications which the substance is constantly undergoing; and Paryāyārthika that which refers to constantly changing conditions of a substance. The Nayas are again classified as 1) Naigama, 2) Saṅgraha, 3) Vyavahāra, 4) Rjuṣṭra, 5) Sābda, 6) Saṁabhīrūḍha and 7) Evambhūta. The first three are subdivisions of Dravyārthika Naya as they deal with objects while the last fall under Paryāyārthika as they are concerned with modifications of substances.

Since Reality infinite number of qualities or attributes, it can be looked at from an infinite number of points of view. Jaina philosophers have dealt with the seven Nayas only and hence I shall deal with each of them separately:

1) Naigama Naya is the figurative stand-point which takes into account the purpose or intention of something which has yet to be accomplished or completed. Pūjayāpāda gives the example of a person who is collecting fuel, water etc. When he is asked what he is doing, he will reply ‘I am cooking’. He is not actually engaged in cooking food but all his activities are actuated by the ultimate object of cooking. Similarly when we speak of a past or future event as a permanent one, we have an illustration of this Naya. It is of three kinds relating to past, present and future. If we say on the Divāli day, “Lord Mahāvīra attained liberation today”, we mean that this day is the anniversary day of the past event. Again, when we ask a person who is booking his passage, he will reply “I am going to England.” When this Naya refers to substances, it does not overlook either the general (sāmānya) or the particular (viśeṣa) attributes (guṇa) of a substance. There is no absolute assertion of the absence of either the general or particular attribute.

2) Saṅgraha Naya: it is concerned with the general or common attributes of a class or group of identical objects. For example, when we use the word Dravya, we use it generally as inclusive of the six kinds of Dravyas or substances. This Naya is
concerned with the class characteristics. This does not mean that this Naya is wholly blind to the particular characteristics so as to deny their existence, in which case a contradiction might arise. The only point to be noted is that it does not refer to the distinguishing characteristics of each object comprising the group or class.

3) Vyavahāra Naya is the stand-point of the particular or distributive. When we speak of an object separately from its class, we have an instance of this Naya. When we speak of soul or pudgala, we refer to a particular kind of dravya and that illustrates this kind of Naya.

The three Nayas described above are the result of looking at the identity of things. In general, they are attempts at understanding the substance or dravya aspect of Reality. Hence they are referred to as dravyārthika Nayas. The remaining four Nayas as indicated by the paryāyārthika are concerned with reality from the points of its modifications or "in the analysis of the fleeting side."

4) Rūjūstra Naya is concerned with the present form of the object without concerning itself either with its past or future condition, since the present state of existence itself is what matters most in many cases. It takes into account 1) the actual condition at a particular moment and 2) the actual condition for a long time. The first variety is called Sūksma (fine) and the second Stūla (gross). "A soul with a momentary good thought is an example of the former while a Jīva with a human condition for a life time is an example of the latter."

5) Sabda Naya is the verbal view-point which is also translated as the stand point of synonyms. We find two examples in Jaina works to illustrate this Naya. The words kumbha, kalāsa and ghaṭa refer to the same object, viz. the jar. Similarly the various names like Indra, Śakra and Purandara denote one individual, despite the difference implied in the basic meaning of each word. If there are two words which are identical in meaning, their simultaneous use will lead to a fallacy called sabdanayābhāsa.
6) Samabhirūḍha Naya is the verbal but etymological point of view. There are many words which have a synonym but if their etymological meaning is taken into account, they have a different connotation. Though Śakra and Indra refer to the same person, etymologically Indra means one who is endowed with authority while Purandara means the destroyer of cities; hence there is significant difference in the meanings of the two words as they connote differing functions. While the Śabda Naya is more general treating each word in its popular meaning, the present one goes deep into the etymological meaning of the word to decide the attribute of the object it represents. Śabdanāya follows the principle that every object in reality is describable by word. Several words are used to convey the same meaning with reference to an object but in fact, when considered etymologically, each word has special connotation apart from its general meaning. The Nāyavādīn does not see any contradiction between the two view points. This is so because, according to him, Samabhirūḍha Naya applies stricter canons of etymological derivation and grammatical propriety than is done by the Śabda Naya which treats words in a rough and ready manner at the level of uncritically accepted convention or usage.\footnote{12}

7) Evamāhāta Naya is the mode of actual standpoint. It determines or ascertains an object in its present state or mode. According to this standpoint, a word should be used to denote an object, only when it is in the state which the word connotes. According to this Naya, the word Purandara is to be used only when he is actually engaged in the act of destroying cities. This is stricter in its application than the Samabhirūḍha Naya as it confines itself to the actual state of the object is performing for the time being as distinguished from its etymological or general meaning.

These seven Nayas as noticed by Umāsvāmi are distinguishable from one another from their finer scope or smaller extent, and the succeeding standpoint is dependent on the one preceding it. Hence the order in which these are mentioned in the sūtra... From
the point of view of the infinite characteristics of a substance, the stand points are of numerous subdivisions. They are interdependent and their harmonious combination paves the way to right faith. Pujyapada likens each of them to a cotton thread: when the threads are properly woven, they form a garment comforting the body in the form of a cloth; but if each of them is taken separately and independently, they serve no purpose. The effect of cloth is present in each of the threads potentially but it is only when they are combined that they assist the right belief. Naya-vada is a warning to those philosophers who assert that their system is absolute and all comprehensive: it shows the way to a reconciliation of conflicting view-points and harmonization of all stand-points by appreciating the relativity of the different aspects of reality.

Nayas thus reveal only a part of the totality and they should not be mistaken for the whole. Because of this infinite-fold constitution of a thing, there shall be infinite Nayas, and the same can be classified under broad heads as seven, two and so forth. As Akalanka defines, Naya is a particular approach of the knower (naye jnatur abhiprayah). A synthesis of these different view-points is a practical necessity: therein every view-point must be able to retain its relative importance and this is fulfilled by Syadvada.

Syadvada

It is clear that the analytical stand-points refer to partial truths and it is only their synthetic combination that will bring harmony into a coherent scheme of knowledge. That is the synthetical method employed by the doctrine of Syadvada. This is illustrated by many Jaina thinkers by the parable of seven blind men and the elephant. One blind man feels the leg and says that the elephant is like a pillar; the other feels its body and says that it is like a wall; the third feels its ear and says that it is like a winnowing pan. Thus each feels only one organ of the elephant and regards that it alone represents the whole truth. For a person who can see the whole elephant with his own eyes, it is clear that individual
view of each blind man represents only a partial truth and the whole reality can be understood by the logical harmonization of all the view-points. This will further indicate that each view is only relative and expressive of only that which is felt by the sense of touch.

The doctrine of Syādvāda Saptabhangi has been explained by Kundakunda in verse 14 of the "Pañcāstikāya" as also in verses 22–23 of Canto II of the "Pravacanasāra." It is necessary to mention that Canto II deals with Jneyatva or knowability. The context under which the doctrine is propounded relates to the subject-matter of Dravyas or substances which are subject to existence, modification and destruction. It is acknowledged that comprehension of the entire gamut of knowledge is possible only by Omniscience. The need for the doctrine arises because of the eternal process of modifications to which a substance is subject and the inability of the human senses to comprehend the entire reality in its fullness.

The object of knowledge is a huge complexity constituted of substances, qualities and modifications, extended over three times and infinite space, and simultaneously subjected to origination, destruction and permanence. Such an object of knowledge can be comprehended only in Omniscience. The senses are the indirect means of knowledge and whatever they apprehend is partial like the perception of an elephant by the seven blind persons. The ordinary human being cannot rise above the limitations of his senses; so his apprehension of reality is partial, and it is only from a particular point of view: this leads to the Nayavāda of the Jaina. When ordinary human knowledge is partial, a new method stating our approach to the complex reality had to be devised and that is Syādvāda, the doctrine of conditional predications. Thus the doctrine is the direct result of the strong awareness of the complexity of the object of knowledge and the limitations of human apprehension and expression. The substance is subjected to a constant flux of modifications, and we always look at it through one modification or the other, present or absent.
When we are looking at its present modification, we should not absolutely deny the past or the future ones: the peculiar position leads us to conditional affirmation, conditional negation and conditional indescribability, which by their combination give rise seven possible statements. 20

It is thus clear that Syādvāda relates to knowledge derived only through the senses. We have shown above while discussing Nayavāda that the various methods of approach can be grasped and analysed. A synthesis of these methods or modes forms the basis of Syādvāda. Syādvādā is thus a corollary of Nayavāda; the latter is analytical and primarily conceptual and the former is synthetical and mainly verbal. It should be expressly understood that 1) the doctrine of Asti-Nāsti is distinctly confined to the world of reality only or to an object in the world. 2) The doctrine should not be applied to non-existing things.

The doctrine is formulated in seven steps:

1) Syādasti (may be, is)
2) Syānuāsti (may be, is not)
3) Syādasti Nāsti ca (may be, is and is not)
4) Syādavaktavyaṁ (may be, is inexpressible)
5) Syādasti ca Avaktavyaṁ (may be, is inexpressible)
6) Syānnāstica Avaktavyaṁ (may be, is not and inexpressible)
7) Syādasti ca Nāstica Avaktavyaṁ (may be, is and is not and inexpressible).

An illustration will make these propositions clear. The seven predications are expressed by the permutation and combination of the three expressions: asti, nāsti and avaktavyaṁ, the word syāt being common to all of them. Where the predicate is simple, it relates to an object: where it is complex, the predication is relative with reference to the characteristics of Dravya, its place, time or space. Take for example, a jar made of clay and another substance like a cloth.
So far as the first mode is concerned, the jar exists as one made of clay; when we consider the second mode of predication, it does not exist as a jar made of gold or of some other metal. The significance of the second mode is not of creating a contradiction with reference to the first but of clarifying that the jar does exist but not as one made of a metal. The third mode refers to simultaneous states of existence and non-existence. Apparently one might say that this is self-contradiction; but a logical examination of the statement would disclose that it relates to two statements and two states of existence. It exists in the sense of a jar made of clay but it does not exist as made of gold. There is no contradiction in the joint statements. Supposing with reference to a building, it is initially built for residence but subsequently used as a godown. One can say that it is a house while another might say that it is not house but a godown. The first part of the statement would be correct with reference to the purpose for which it was built while the second one would be correct with reference to the actual user. There is therefore no contradiction in the third mode of expression.

The fourth predication refers to the state of inexpressibility of a thing. The medium of expression of reality is language and sometimes a word conveys more meanings than one; in such cases, the word carries out the functions of two words depending upon the concept intended to be conveyed and the context under which the alternative meaning is required to be conveyed. The situation of inexpressibility may arise due to the insufficiency of the word to convey the entire concept or due to the inability to comprehended all the attributes of an object. So when there is a simultaneous presentation of the two concepts of “being” with reference to the jar or any other object, when the predicate becomes inexpressible. The logic of this predication becomes clear when we remember that impossibility of one word conveying two meanings simultaneously. The whole range of truth cannot be conveyed by an expression and hence the predication of inexpressibility. Take for example, there is the fresh juice of a palm tree. We call it nira; it is kept for sometime and its starts to ferment. There would be
a stage in the state of fermentation when it is not possible to say that the liquid is either nirā or an intoxicating drink (sindi). The only reasonable reply would be: 'I cannot say'. It is inexpressible and the quality of the liquid becomes indescribable. To return to our example, it is an attempt to present the states of "being" and "non-being" in the jar simultaneously.

The remaining three modes are derived from combining the three primary concepts in such a way that these three, combined with the four modes hitherto expounded, exhaust all the possible or alternative aspects of truth concerning the object in question.

The fifth mode is a combination of the first and the fourth predicates. It predicates the two attributes of existence and inexpressibility simultaneously. 'May be, the jar is and is inexpressible'; that is, the two predicates are presented together. "Being" refers to its existence while "inexpressibility" refers to the changing modes of the substance with reference to its dravya, rūpa, kāla and kṣetra. The sixth mode viz., syānāsti ca avaktavyam. 'The jar is, the jar is not with reference to another substance' but when both are simultaneously predicated, the concept becomes inexpressible. This is again an instance of simultaneous predication of three concepts. The seventh predication relates to simultaneous assertion of existence, nonexistence and inexpressibility. The jar exists with reference to its dravya, kṣetra, rūpa and kāla and it does not exist with reference to the four attributes of some other substance. When the two are combined in predication, they become inexpressible. This is formed by the combination of the third and the fourth predications.

It may be of interest to cite another illustration given by Mahalanobis while dealing with the theory of Syādvāda: Consider the tossing of a coin; and suppose it turns up "head". We may say 1) "it is head" (now). This also implies, 2) "it is not head" (on some other occasion). The third category follows without difficulty, 3) "it is and it is not" which is a synthetic predication based on both 1) and 2). The fourth category predicates that the position is still indeterminate. Consider the throw
of a coin. It has the possibility of head (it is) and not head (it is not) sometimes head and sometimes not-head; the combination of both the possibilities of "it is" and "it is not" is another indefinite or indeterminate from. 5) The fifth category of knowledge in Jaina logic predicates the existence of indetermination (which we may perhaps interpret, in modern language, as the assertion of the existence of the probability field). 6) The sixth category denies the existence of a probability field; while 7) the seventh category covers the whole range of possibilities mentioned in the other six categories.24

To the Syādvādin, the existence is a huge complexity; human mind cannot adequately comprehend it, nor can the human speech properly express the same. As such, absolute and categorical statements are out of court, and all statements are true so far as our particular point of view is concerned.25 It should be obvious that the combinations of points of view cannot be more than seven. So theoretically there can be only seven points of view and not more. Thus reality is open to seven statements and not more. The reason why the number of modes is neither more nor less than seven is because it is believed, any complex situation is amenable to treatment by this seven fold technique if one is adept in using it... Any attempt to add or subtract a mode will be found to be impossible since addition finds the mode already there among the existing seven modes, and subtraction will mutilate on essential limit from the scheme.26 Einstein's Theory of Relativity has tried to establish link between space and time and made mass dependent upon the velocity with which it moved... The theory from which Einstein proceeded indicated that time and space meant different things to different observers. To any one observer they appear easy to distinguish from one another. But we are unable to carry over the identification from one observer to another; there is no test by which we can try it.27 This theory is still regarded as incomplete. As compared with the theory of relativity Syādvāda is much simpler and less elaborate, and the reasons are quite apparent; the bounds of human knowledge have become much wider and the achievements of science more fruitful than
what they were some centuries before. The contribution of Syādvāda and Relativity to the ultimate outlook on life and its problems, taking into consideration the conditions under which and the age in which they are propounded is almost the same. Syādvāda establishes a perfect harmony between apparently discordant concepts. It is of great importance in the field of philosophy as a science of understanding and synthesising reality. It stands for cosmopolitanism of thought and 'intellectual tolerance' for which Jainism has eminently stood for the last two thousand years or more.

This doctrine has however been subjected to much criticism. Some have called it a doctrine of uncertainty while others have called it a variety of scepticism; some others say that it is beset with contradictions. These views seem to be misconceived. They seem to apply the doctrine to mere abstract concepts when in fact it is based upon the fundamental characteristics of substance to show that "reality has something which is relatively permanent and yet relatively changing."

According to Syādvāda, each modal truth is valid so far as it goes and all the seven points cover the full range of reality. Each viewpoint is distinct but yet when all are considered cumulatively, they achieve a comprehensive synthesis. The criticism that it is a sceptical doctrine is belied from the fact that its object is to show by an examination of all aspects of reality that real knowledge is attainable. Reality partakes of being and non-being as its constituent elements. It has being in respect of its own nature and non-being in respect of the nature of another. In fact, this is the basic doctrine of Jainism. Every philosophical doctrine of any creed or religion must be examined in the light of its basic doctrines and not in isolation. According to Jacobi, it is a happy way leading out of the maze of Ajñānavāda. Though Dr. S. Radhakrishnan is a hard critic of the doctrine, he says "The Jains admit that a thing cannot have a self-contradictory attributes at the same time and in the same sense. All that they is that everything is of complex nature and identity in difference. The real comprehends and reconciles differences in itself. Attributes
which are contradictory in the abstract co-exist in life and experience. The tree is moving in that its branches are moving and it is not moving since it is fixed to its place in the ground.”31 For Whitehead, coherence would mean that the fundamental ideas presuppose each other. In isolation, they are meaningless. It does not mean that they are definable in terms of each other, though they are relevant to each other. No entity can be conceived in complete abstraction from the system of the universe, and that it is the business of speculative philosophy to exhibit this truth. This character is its coherence. He also says that ‘systematization of knowledge cannot be conducted in watertight compartments. All general truths condition each other; and the limits of their application cannot be adequately defined apart from their correlation by yet wider generalities. This is the attitude of Jainas also.”32

Certain ideas of Syādvāda seem to have close relevance to the concepts of probability which can supply a convenient background... to the foundations of statistics. The difference between Jaina avaktya and the concept of probability lies in the fact that the latter has definite quantitative implications. The concept of numerical frequency ratios distinguishes modern statistical theory from the Jaina theory of Syādvāda.33 At the same time it is of interest to note that 1500 or 2500 years ago Syādvāda seems to have given the logical background of statistical theory in a qualitative from.34 The emphasis given by the Jaina philosophy on the relatedness of things and on the multiform aspects of reals... appear to be similar... to the basic ideas underlying the concepts of association, correlation and concomitant variation in modern statistics... The realist and pluralist views of Jaina philosophy and the continuing emphasis on the multiform and infinitely diversified aspects of reality... amounts to the acceptance of an “open” of the universe with scope for unending change and discovery... It has certain interesting resemblances to the probabilistic and statistical view of reality in modern times.35

J. B. S. Haldane says that the search for truth by the scientific method does not lead to complete certainty; still less does it lead
to complete uncertainty. Hence any logical system which allows of conclusions intermediate between certainty and uncertainty should interest scientists. The earliest such system known to me is Sanātana-Saṃkhyā. He has worked out the seven alternatives by mathematical formulae. He gives an example where the saptabhānginīnayā actually applied in scientific research which he suspects was "not far from what was in Bhadradēva's mind." In the study of the physiology of the sense organs it is important to determine a threshold. For example, a light cannot be seen below a certain intensity, or a solution of substance which is tasted as bitter when concentrated cannot be distinguished from water when it is diluted. Some experimenters order their subjects to say "yes" or "no" to the question "Is this illuminated?" or "Is this bitter?" If the experimenter is interested in the psychology of perception he will permit the subject also to answer "it is uncertain", or some equivalent phrase. He agrees that in view of Mahālayanobis that the saptabhānginīnayā foreshadows modern statistitical theory is correct.

These views make it clear that the human mind comprehends the complexity of entire existence, but not fully, nor can the human speech express it adequately. Therefore all statements can be true only in so far as they go, that is, in so far as the speaker's view-point is concerned. It is the inadequacy of human understanding that renders the different points of view possible and reasonable.

The aim of Saṃkhyā happily corresponds with the scope of philosophy in modern thought. Saṃkhyā aims to unify, coordinate, harmonise and synthesise the individual points a practical whole. The conceptions of the various philosophers as we have seen them are diverse and the grounds on which they are sought to be explained are numerous. None of them can be accepted as wholly true or rejected as wholly false. True knowledge, which philosophy aims at, is the knowledge of a whole, a culminating synthesis after every avenue of analysis is exhausted. The function of Naṣānava is almost the same; so far as the underlying idea is concerned, it is that of various special
Compendium Of Jainism

sciences; just as the syādvāda hormonises various Nayas, so modern philosophy aims to harmonise the conclusions of different experimental sciences... Syādvāda is necessary to convey the nature of reality.40

The Jaina philosopher maintains that every existent possesses infinite attributes and characteristics which can be discovered by experience alone. The mind is an instrument of discovery. Individuals will differ in their views as they are based on their knowledge and experience. The central thesis of the Jaina is that there is not only diversity of reals, but each diversity is equally diversified... The conclusion is legitimate that each real is possessed of an infinite number of modes at every moment. The number of reals is infinite and consequently their relations with one another are infinite... All things are related in one way or the other and relations induce relational qualities in the relata, which accordingly become diversified at each moment and throughout their career.41

The Vedantist starts with the premise that reality is one universal existence; the Bhudist fluxist believes in atomic particulars, each absolutely different from the rest and having nothing underlying them to bind them together. The Naivāyika believes both to be combined in an individual, though he maintains that the two characters are different and distinct. The Jaina differs from them all and maintains that the universal and the particular are only distinguishable traits in a real, which is at once identical with and different from both.42

In sum, a thorough insight into the philosophy of standpoints is necessary to estimate the true value of the statements of our predecessors in the field of metaphysical research. Mankind would find that almost all the confusion of thought, and we might say, the animosity existing between the followers of different religions, would cease to exist as soon as they test the scriptural text which most of us blindly adhere to with the aid of the touchstone of Nayavāda (the philosophy of stand points). If they would only insert the word 'somehow' (syāt in Samskrit) before any scriptural
or prophetic statement, they would find their minds becoming trained in the right direction to enquire into the standpoint of the prophet who made any particular statement... It would also enable us to reconcile many a contradictory statement in the scriptures of the same creed as well as those of different faiths; for it does often happen that a statement which is wrong from one particular point of view is not so from another, e.g., one observer might say that a bowl full of water contains no air, while another might describe it as containing nothing else but air, both being right from their respective stand-points since water is only gaseous matter in its essence though manifested in the form of liquid substance owing to the action of atoms of hydrogen and oxygen on one another.43

Syādvāda is not merely speculative in character but provides the key to a solution of the ontological problems. It has supplied the philosopher with catholicity of thought, convincing him that Truth is not anybody’s monopoly with tariff walls of denominational religion, while furnishing the religious aspirant with the virtue of intellectual toleration which is that part of Ahimsā which is one of the fundamental tenets of Jainism.44
Bibliography and References

1. Umāsvāmi: *Tattvarthasutra (Reality)* Chap V, Sūtra (English translation of Pujyapāda’s Sarvārthasiddhi) Vīra Sasana Sangha, 29 Bisvas Road, Calcutta-37.


38. *Ibid* P 199.


40. *Ibid* P 86.


CHAPTER XX

RELEVANCE OF JAINISM TO MODERN THOUGHT

Today we are living in a world of science. Science has dispelled many traditional beliefs and primitive superstitions. It has increased immensely man’s sense of human power. The industrial revolution has changed the values of life and has brought in misery in countries like India which are essentially agricultural both in resources and production. The handicraftsmen have been thrown out of work by the machines and the rural workers have been compelled to migrate to the towns. In the industrial areas, the trade unions and strikes have been clamouring for more wages and disturbing peaceful life in cities. Inspite of all the best efforts of the States, poverty still continues to dog the path of majority of the people in our country. The population continues to increase; if the present rate of increase persists, there will be two groups in society, one group of the poor with increasing population and the other of the rich with stationary population.

Everything turns on politics. Normal life of the country is dominated by politicians and power seekers. The panchayats and the Municipal Councils which have become the play grounds of political powers have brought into public life more evils than good. Black-marketing, adultration, smuggling and corruption in various forms have become the order of the day. Honest life has been becoming more difficult, if it is not a life of suffering. Educational
institutions and universities are facing problems of discipline and some of them are on the verge of disruption, both moral and financial. Religion and ethics are heard more on platforms than in actual life private or public. There is a widespread feeling that we have reached a decisive moment in our history when we must make a choice of an ideology which will solve the ills of present life.

Progress in science and technology face peculiar dangers. The two irreconcilable ideologies of communists and capitalists are itching to fling arms at each other knowing full well that they will ruin themselves along with many other innocent nations, if the die were cast. "The shape of the future" says Dr. Radhakrishnan, "gives us much concern. With all the resources at our command, with all the gifts with which we have been endowed, with all the powers that we have developed, we are unable to live in peace and safety. We have grown in knowledge and intelligence but not in wisdom and virtue. For lack of the latter, things are interlocked in perpetual strife. No centre holds the world together... The social pathos of the age is exploited by countless individuals in different parts of the world who pose as leaders and proclaim their foolishness as wisdom. We are sowing grain and weeds at random."

We have almost reached the edge of a precipice. The tragedy of the modern man is that he scorns spiritual values and worships mammon. For some years past, pursuit of riches, fame and the pleasures of the senses has been the goal of many people in all climes and countries; it absorbs the mind so much that it leaves no time to reflect on anything better. The pursuit has become more vigorous than at any other time before, in human history. By sensual pleasures the mind is enthralled to the extent of quiescence as if the supreme good were actually attained, so that it is quite incapable of thinking of any other object; when such pleasures have been gratified, it is followed by extreme melancholy, whereby the mind, though enthralled, is disturbed and dulled. The pursuit of honours and riches is likewise very absorbing, especially if such objects are sought for their own sake,
in as much as they are then supposed to constitute the highest
good. In the case of fame, the mind is still more absorbed, for
fame is conceived as always good for its own sake, and as the
ultimate end to which all actions and directed. Further the
attainment of riches and fame is not followed as in the case of
sensual pleasures by repentance, but the more we acquire, the
greater is our delight; on the other hand, if our hopes happen to
be frustrated, we are plunged into the deepest sadness. Fame has
the further drawback that it compels its votaries to order their
lives according to the opinions of their fellowmen, shunning what
they usually shun and seeking what they usually seek. All these
facts establish that our happiness or unhappiness depends
upon the quality of the objects we live for, objects which are
perishable.

Every religion lays down that all human beings are born equal
but yet, equality in social status and equality of rights have been
denied to different sections of the population in different countries.
Though Jefferson has stated in his Declaration of Independence
that all men are created equal and that they are endowed by their
creator with certain unalienable rights like Life, Liberty and the
pursuit of Happiness, yet the Negroes are denied these rights. The
capitalist system of society still maintains slavery, serfdom and
racial discrimination. In our own country, Article 17 of the
Constitution of India has abolished untouchability and declared
that the enforcement of any disability arising out of untouchability
shall be an offence punishable in accordance with law. But the
social evil still persists and the social disabilities imposed on that
class of persons by reason of their birth still continue to be
practised. There is no religious or moral sanction in one making
another a slave or treating him as a negro or an untouchable.

These and similar other matters worry the modern mind.
All the objects pursued by the multitude not only bring no remedy
that tends to preserve and inspire our being but act as hindrances
to higher thoughts. Besides, the present generation is fast losing
confidence in itself.
The most vital factor for human peace and happiness is unshakable confidence in that potential powers of one's own Self amongst the individuals constituting the society. Even the consciousness of the existence of eternal and infinite power within one's own self fills us with joy and adds zest to our life, and a meaning to our thoughts and actions. According to Jainism, the soul and matter are two important substances and the world itself is uncreate and eternal. There are infinite souls in the universe. The attributes of the soul are infinite knowledge or omniscience, infinite bliss, infinite strength and infinite energy. The soul is formless, is the maker of his own future, the enjoyer of the fruits of his own Karmas and is Siddha. The happiness and misery which we enjoy and suffer are of our own making. The path of liberation consists in the confluence of Right Faith in the tattvas, Right knowledge of the tattvas or the attributes of the soul, and Right conduct, that is, the faithful observance of all the austerities and rules of pure conduct. This triple Right path is designed to enable the soul to attain Godhood which is its own nature potentially. Countless souls have attained liberation by following this path. This path is understandable and appeals to common sense. The great poet Tennyson voiced the same doctrine when he said:

Self knowledge, self-reverence and self-control shall alone lead man to sovereign power.

To those who feel diffident about themselves and their future, is not this philosophy that one's own self has all the attributes of Godhood and that every votary of the universal truths can attain that status, sufficient to inspire vision and strength in every individual to realize that the path of righteous duty is the way to glory and the attainment of Siddha status? Whoever leads a life of Ahimsā, self-control and penance shall attain happiness here and hereafter. This message that every living being is the architect of his own fortune comes as a boon infusing new hope and aspirations in all those who need a rationalistic religion to follow.
As C. E. M. Joad says, truth, goodness, beauty and happiness are the ultimate values and objectives of life. These four are desired, valued and pursued for their own sake, they are independent factors in the universe and have intrinsic characteristics. The progress of mankind is to be measured by the increasing degree to which these values are perceived and pursued. Failure to do so is due to lack of insight and of the will needed for the purpose. 

Today all these values have been fast receding from human sight because ugliness and untruth have dominated the thoughts and conduct of people who count in society. The evolution of morals is a social concern just as evolution of spirituality is the personal concern of every individual sanctity. There is a general atmosphere of mutual disturb and social insecurity. There are three bases for moral consciousness: 1) Faith in one's ultimate benefit through abstinence from evil 2) Faith in the inevitability of bad consequences of evil deeds and 3) Faith in the immortality of the soul. No moral consciousness worth the name can exist without cultivation of these beliefs.

The five Anuvratas offer a solution both to the individual as also to societies and nations. Ahimsa is no doubt preached by all religions but Jainism has worked it out both in its negative and positive aspects in such a way that a conscientious observance of it in every thought and action is sure to safeguard both personal and social interests. The most comprehensive definition of Ahimsa is given by Amritacandra Suri in his well known book “Puruṣartha-Siddhyupāya” : जात्मपरिणामहिसनहन्त्वात्सत्तमेव हिसेतत् (Verse 41) whoever causes injury to the material or conscious vitalities of a living being through passionate activity of the mind, body or speech, surely causes Ahimsa. It is the presence of passion as a moving cause that is responsible for an act of Ahimsa which may be either to the bhāva-prāṇa, that is, the conscious vitalities like consciousness, peacefulness, happiness, emotion etc., or to the dravya-prāṇa like the five senses, the three forces of body, mind and speech, and breathing and age. The conscious vitalities are
possessed by all Jivas alike. Absence of attachment and of any of the passions is Ahimsa. A person with a passion first injures his own self through his own self. The degree of culpability varies with the degree of intensity of intention or passion.

Ahimsa in the modern world has relevance to the solution of two questions: 1) Nature of food and 2) War and peace.

In its positive aspect Ahimsa means sanctity of life and universal love for all living creatures. Ahimsa is the law of human beings while violence is the law of the beasts end of the jungle. It is a matter of common experience that the food we take has as much effect on our body as on our temperament. It is argued that the vegetable food produced in the world is not sufficient for the growing population and that therefore use of non-vegetarian food is inevitable. It has to be conceded that for one reason or the other many people, who are born in families in which vegetarianism is not the traditional food habit, take to meat eating. The only answer to it is that they are under a deceptive belief that that such diet is healthier and more nutritious. That this is a wrong concept of nutritive values of food can be verified by referring to any standard book on food and nutrition. In her address to the World Vegetarian Congress, Dr. Annie Besant said: "The constant use of meat in utter disregard of the sting of the conscience hardens the heart and the man becomes bereft of the feeling of mercy. The butcher uses his knife upon bewailing mute creatures, which are images of fear and horror, without the least worry. For this reason, in the United States no butcher is permitted to sit on the jury in a murder trial; he is not permitted to take part in such a trial simply because his continual contact with slaughter is held to somewhat blunt his susceptibilities in this connection, so that all through the States no man of the trade is permitted to take part as a jurymen in a trial for murder."

Such opinions can be multiplied to any extent. Mahatma Gandhi has narrated his experience of meat eating, of the horror and the nightmare that haunted him that day and sometime
thereafter. It is a matter of gratification to all lovers of animal life that the movement for vegetarianism and prevention of cruelty to animals has been gradually attracting greater number of Westerners to be its votaries. All pious and great thinkers in the world have sung in praise of mercy and compassion for life and tried to propagate the same.

We are living in a world of chronic conflicts and in constant dread of war. Robert Bridges, the great poet Laureate of England said:

"...needless taking of life putteth Reason to shame, and men so startled at bloodshed that all homicide may to a purist seem mortal pollution of soul. 

Duty of mightiness is to protect the weak, and since slackness in duty is unto noble minds a greater shame and blame than any chance offence ensuing on right conduct, this hath my assent that where there is savagery there will be war."

Even though the Charter of the United Nations signed on June 26, 1945 at the Conference of International organisation in San Francisco, California, stated that the peoples of the United Nations were determined to save the succeeding generations from the scourge of war and "to reaffirm faith in fundamental human rights, in the dignity and worth of the human person, in the equal rights of men and women...", there have been wars and the averments of good neighbourliness and mutual tolerance have remained a dead letter. The reason is that the warring nations forget the dignity and sacredness of human life. Mahatma Gandhi has established the supremacy of moral force of Ahimsa in India's battle for freedom against a formidable nation. He said that if love was not the law of life, life would not have persisted in the midst of death. "The law of love will work, just as the gravitation will work, whether we accept it or not... The more I work at this law, the more I feel the delight in life, the light in the scheme of universe." It is the faithful adherence to this principle alone
that can bring harmony and peace in national life and international relationship. All over the world, most of the men and women including their leaders go to temples, churches and mosques, as enjoined by their respective faiths, hear sermons on the blessedness of the merciful. What is therefore needed today is practice of what is heard or read with faith and devotion.9

The age we live in has been called the atomic age. New sources of energy are being tapped in various ways, but instead of thinking of them in terms of service and betterment of mankind, we have used them for manufacture of destructive weapons. It is not that the existence of the atom was unknown in the past. The term anu, the Sanskrit equivalent of 'atom' is found in the Upanishads, but the atom theory is foreign to Vedanta. Amongst the remaining schools of thought, the Jaina form of it is probably the earliest says, Prof. Hiriyanna. The atoms according to it are of the same kind, but they can give rise to an infinite variety of things so that matter is conceived here as of quite an indefinite nature. Pudgala has, as we know, certain inalienable features; but within the limits imposed by them it can become anything through qualitative differentiation. The transmutation of the elements is quite possible in this view and is not a mere dream of the alchemist.10 Dr. Hermann Jacobi has subscribed to the view that the Jainas are the earliest to declare matter to be atomical. The atoms according to the Jainas are indefinite as regards quality; they may be in a gross (bādara) or subtle (sūkṣma) state; in the former they occupy one point of space (prādeśa) each; in the latter an infinite number of them may be simultaneously present in the same point; by the combination of gross atoms all things in the world are produced except the souls (Jiva) and the substances, ākāśa, dharma and adharma.11

I have made a reference to the atomic theory only to show that the Jaina thinkers were aware of the most modern theory; but they do not seem to have made use of it for any purpose, as the human needs were then very modest and its destructive use was unthinkable in that their philosophy was only constructive without the slightest tinge of himāsā or harm to any body.
Now coming to the social question of equality of status, Jainism has singular message to convey to a society in which distinctions are based on caste and creeds which in their turn depend upon birth. Inspite of the universal benefits of modern civilization, prejudices due to race, colour or nationality persist and the people are divided amongst themselves. Racial arrogance or superiority of birth has been losing weight. The Eighth and Ninth sermons as contained in the “Uttarādhhyayana Sūtra” clearly point out that superiority or inferiority is not based on birth but on the kind of deeds, of virtue or wickedness. All humanity is one and differences are created by men and women from their own good and evil deeds. During Mahāvīra’s life time, he divided the human beings into four groups: the Munis, the Arjikās, the Śrāvakas, and Śrāvakās. To all of them, he preached the same Dharma and recognised that even women could acquire scriptural knowledge and attain perfection. There is however one point to be noted. The Digambara tradition says that women will not be able to realize salvation on account of their physiological infirmities while the Śvetāmbara tradition is that they too can attain salvation.

Instances of this equality of status can be mentioned from Mahāvīra’s own life. One day Mahāvīra entered a town for food. People of all ranks and grades stood at their doors eager to offer him food. He accepted food from a slave girl who had been kept separate and was not permitted to touch metal utensils. A slave girl by name Candana offered some rice and Mahāvīra took a portion of it and left the place. The girl was a pious devotee. This aroused the conscience of the people and the master of the slave girl set her free after falling at her feet.

That this is so has been recognised by scholars of repute. Even though Mrs Sinclair Stevenson stigmatised Jainism as having an “empty heart”, she admits that one of the unique glories of Jainism is that it, unlike most Indian born religions, believes in the possibility of aliens reaching its goal. Even Europeans and Americans, although they may have never heard of Jainism, if
they follow, though unconsciously, the five rules of conduct, of necessity destroy their Karmanas and so are sped to moksha like an arrow from a bow. R. Williams has also subscribed to the same view. "The Jaina religion" he says "is a tirtha, a way of progress through life, and while the yati acara teaches the individual to organise his own salvation, the aim of Sravakacara is to ensure that an environment is created in which an ascetic may be able to travel the road of moksha. It must be therefore concerned with the community as well as with the individual. Jainism welcomes the like-minded even if they do not outwardly profess its beliefs, and relies very much on the force of examples." It is thus clear that on the social plane, Jainism makes no distinctions on the basis of birth but gives absolute independence and freedom to every person to follow its principles according to his or her choice. Nothing intervenes between his actions and the fruits thereof.

Jainism wanted to avoid economic inequalities in societies by requiring the people to follow the vow of Aparigraha. The vow of truthfulness requires man to abstain from untruth spoken out of passion or hatred. He can refrain from speaking the truth if it is likely to harm another innocent being. What matters most is the intention behind the speech. So a preceptor who speaks in strong terms against vices and sins will not fall under the category of avoidable speech on account of his sincerity and object of improving others. Taking anything which is not given, with a passionate motive is theft. A person committing theft not only injures the purity of his own soul but also causes pain to another by removing his thing or property. Truthfulness and honesty are the prerequisites for practice of Aprigraha. In the abstract, attachment is itself parigraha. Without mental detachment there cannot be real Aparigraha. If one is unable to renounce wholly attachment for possession of living and non-living objects, he should at least limit them. Such a limitation checks greed which is the main inspiration for acquisition.

A layman is the main stay of society. It is he who maintains the economic health of his society. It is his moral duty to see
that wealth does not accumulate in a few hands so as to create further divisions in his society as rich and poor. Even to maintain harmony and goodwill in society, he has to curtail his own greed. There is no doubt that the moral ideal so intended is to establish economic equality. If wealth accumulates in a few hands as it happens in a capitalist society, the result will be creation of another class suffering the pangs of poverty and sowing the seed of dissatisfaction and ill-will against the rich. The basic principle of human welfare is contentment and normal amount of happiness. The ideal of Aparigraha, even if it is practised in a limited way, leads to social development and harmony of interest.

One of the most powerful factors of irritation in world politics is the existence of the two conflicting forces of Communism and Capitalism. If the former concerns itself with the state ownership of all industrial enterprises, the latter encourages individual ventures in all fields of production and distribution. In both these, the individual morals have to yield to group control. The end of both is multiplication of wealth.

Both these forces concentrate their attention on material wealth with corresponding decline in spiritual aspirations and conduct. It is true that life needs certain comforts to keep body and mind together. Material acquisition, if not checked by sanity and moral considerations, is likely to lead to exploitation depriving others of what they need even for their minimum comfort. In mundane thinking, material progress necessarily implies satisfaction of bodily needs and desires.

The only panacea for subsidence of the conflict of the two ideologies, is the development of individual morals. Resort to falsehood, violence, injustice and exploitation can be checked only by moral forces in the society. Excessive acquisition is the very antithesis of inner purity and social peace. It is only by voluntary limits imposed by each individual on his own desires and possessiveness that the acquisitive tendency can be curtailed. That is what the vow of Aparigraha offers. The goal of life is to purge the mind, body and speech of the various kinds of infirmities
that infest them and start the process of self-purification. Cultivation of a sense of detachment to the extent possible is the first step in the realization of the goal.

It is common experience that happiness and unhappiness are personal in character. All creatures shun unhappiness and they forget that it is largely of their own making. Happiness starts with a spiritual experience founded on a feeling of love and freedom from hatred; it consists in freedom from greed and avarice.

Jainism insists that charity is a part of daily duty of every house-holder. The Jaina community in the North particularly is well-known for its wealth as also for charity. They have built many hospitals and educational institutions. They have tried to alleviate misery and suffering. They have not forgotten establishment of charities for publication of religious literature which is so vital for maintenance of cultural standards and spread of ethical doctrines. Perhaps it is the only community which has built hospitals for animals and birds, though the Sindhis and Hindu Missions have of late followed suit.

The relationship between ends and means is of frequent concern in modern thought. It is well-known that Kautilya, Hitler and Machiavelli advocated that the end justified the means. Mahavira, Buddha, Gandhi and some other humanitarian thinkers and philosophers insisted that good means are necessary for achieving good ends. The Jaina doctrines have constantly urged the need of sound morals for happy living. Even though some people have dubbed Jainism as a pessimistic religion, it is unique in establishing close relationship between happiness and goodness, on the one hand, and misery end wickedness, on the other. The inexorable law of Karma lays down that you reap what you sow. There is no intermediate force or power which can change this law.

Another problem which worries the modern society is the problem of sex. Thinking in the Western countries has so much
advanced that sexual relationship is considered as purely a problem of human emotions and agreeable desires; it is taken out of the moral plane. Contraceptives have been accepted as natural preventives for unwanted births. Even in India with all its religious and ethical background, abortion has been legalised and the use of contraceptives is loudly advocated by Government agencies to prevent increase in population. The vow of celibacy as preached by Jainism prohibits sexual contacts with women other than one’s own wife. Attachment to a wife should be reasonable, as lust and passion result in himsā to the self. Mahatma Gandhi who was, as is well-known, influenced in his early boyhood by the teachings of Jainism, advocated that celibacy meant self-restraint, to be broken only for procreation. His view of family planning is based on self-restraint rather than on the use of contraceptives which has been assuming greater importance day-by-day as resistant to growth of population. All religions except perhaps Islam have regarded marriage as a sacred tie binding the parties to it for life. Divorces have become very frequent in the foreign countries and marriage contracts are for fixed periods. A religion which emphasises the inner purity of each individual, both in thought and action, cannot be expected to toe the line of licence.

I do not like to deal at length with the doctrine of Syādvāda and Nayavāda which are well-known doctrines of Jainism. The idea is that the nature of being is intrinsically indefinite as it is subject to origination, continuance and destruction. From this point, every metaphysical proposition is right from a particular point of view and is bound to differ from another point of view. There are seven forms of metaphysical propositions, each indicating a point of view. The doctrine has been subjected to criticism from other religionists as pessimistic, uncertain, dogmatic and so on.

I have discussed in the previous Chapter the pros and cons of the doctrine of Syādvāda which Prof. Dasgupta has called “Relative Pluralism”. It stands for harmony of apparently
conflicting doctrines by systematic reconciliation. It engenders
toleration and avoids conflicts.

The modern world is a world of expanding knowledge, both
scientific and technological. The multiplication of the means of
production for peaceful luxurious living as well as for war has
driven the world to the brink of a precipice. The world is
confronted with the problems of war, of sexual behaviour and
racial integration.

The warring parties deny the existence of human brotherhood
for the time being and when the ambers of war have cooled down,
the walls of the innocents who have been thoughtlessly victims and
of the survivors who clamour for rehabilitation only awaken
humanity to the need of establishment of brotherhood. I have
already shown above how the different principles contribute to a
stable society and how war can be avoided by the dynamic spread
of the gospel of Ahimsa. The Second World War has demonstrated
how the use of inhuman technique ends in misery to both
sides. Unless religious faith and moral idealism have their natural
sway on human minds, there can be no safety to the society nor
scope for preservation of the seven freedoms of man.

In the modern world, the search for relevance or the validity
of religious doctrines, cannot be left only to the religious profes-
sionals: scientists, philosophers, humanists, sociologists and
jurists have to deliberate with them by providing an intellectual,
content and background to the understanding of theological
doctrines and to the practice of ethical codes in the regulation of
national and international relationships. The sanctity of life has
to be asserted at all costs and the dignity of personality has to be
recognised in order to avoid war and racial discrimination. The
principles of non-violence, love of truth, absence of greed, self-
control, and avoidance of undue attachment form a practical
code of conduct for individuals as well as social groups. In their
application to International Relationship, they are cumulatively
called Pancasila requiring each nation 1) to have respect
for each other’s territorial integrity, 2) to adopt the policy of
non-aggression, 3) to desist from interference in each other’s
internal affairs, 4) to extend the principle of equality for mutual benefit and 5) to understand and observe in conduct the principle of peaceful co-existence.

Religion as a tool of economic advancement can only lay down high moral codes which respect each other’s right to property and freedom of practising one’s own trade or business. The inner life of an individual is more valuable than anything that a state can guarantee. Though salvation is not of this world, it has to be won in this world.

To achieve this objective, every one has first to save his own soul and at the same time contribute his mite to the well-being of others. This is the gospel of Sarvodaya; this all-embracing character of the principles of Mahāvīra was first called by this term by Samantabhadra in the 2nd Century A.D. in verse 61 of his book called “Yuktyānusāsana.” Umāsvāmi rightly stated that the function of the human beings is to help each other; “परस्परोपप्रती जीवानाम्”

That is the philosophy of ideal living which Jainism preached long ago but its scope and meaning have been expounded by Albert Einstein in the present century: “From the stand point of daily life, however, there is one thing we do know, that is, man is here for the sake of other men, above all for those upon whose smiles and well-being our happiness depends, and also for the countless unknown souls with whose fate we are connected by a bond of sympathy. Many times a day I realise how much my outer and inner life is built upon the labours of my fellowmen, both living and dead, and how earnestly I must exert myself in order to give in return as much as I have received.”

The ethical and spiritual values of Jainism are scientifically valid and would continue to hold good for all ages to come. The daily prayer of a Jaina includes the following verse which constantly reminds him of universal love and brotherhood which are of lasting human value: “
"O Lord, grant me ever and anon affection towards all living beings, joyful-respect towards the virtuous compassion and sympathy for the afflicted and tolerance towards the perverted and the ill-behaved."

The kinship and friendship which Jainism wants to establish transcends all barriers of castes and creeds, of climes and countries. In the words of Mrs. Annie Besant, the message of Jainism to humanity is "Peace between man and man, peace between man and animal, peace everywhere and in all things, a perfect brotherhood of all that lives."
Bibliography and References


15. Umāsvāmi: *Tattvarthasūtra (Reality)*, Ch V, Śūtra 21.